



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



# CLASSICAL WORKS.

## LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

Harvard College  
Library



By Exchange

Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D.  
12mo. 408 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and  
Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the Univer-  
sity of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from  
Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. TRACER, of Yale College.  
12mo. 194

### STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 875 pages.

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 829 pages.

**Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.** Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STUBBS. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

**Tacitus's Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

### GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

**A First Greek Book\* and Introductory Reader.** By A. HARKNESS, Ph.D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

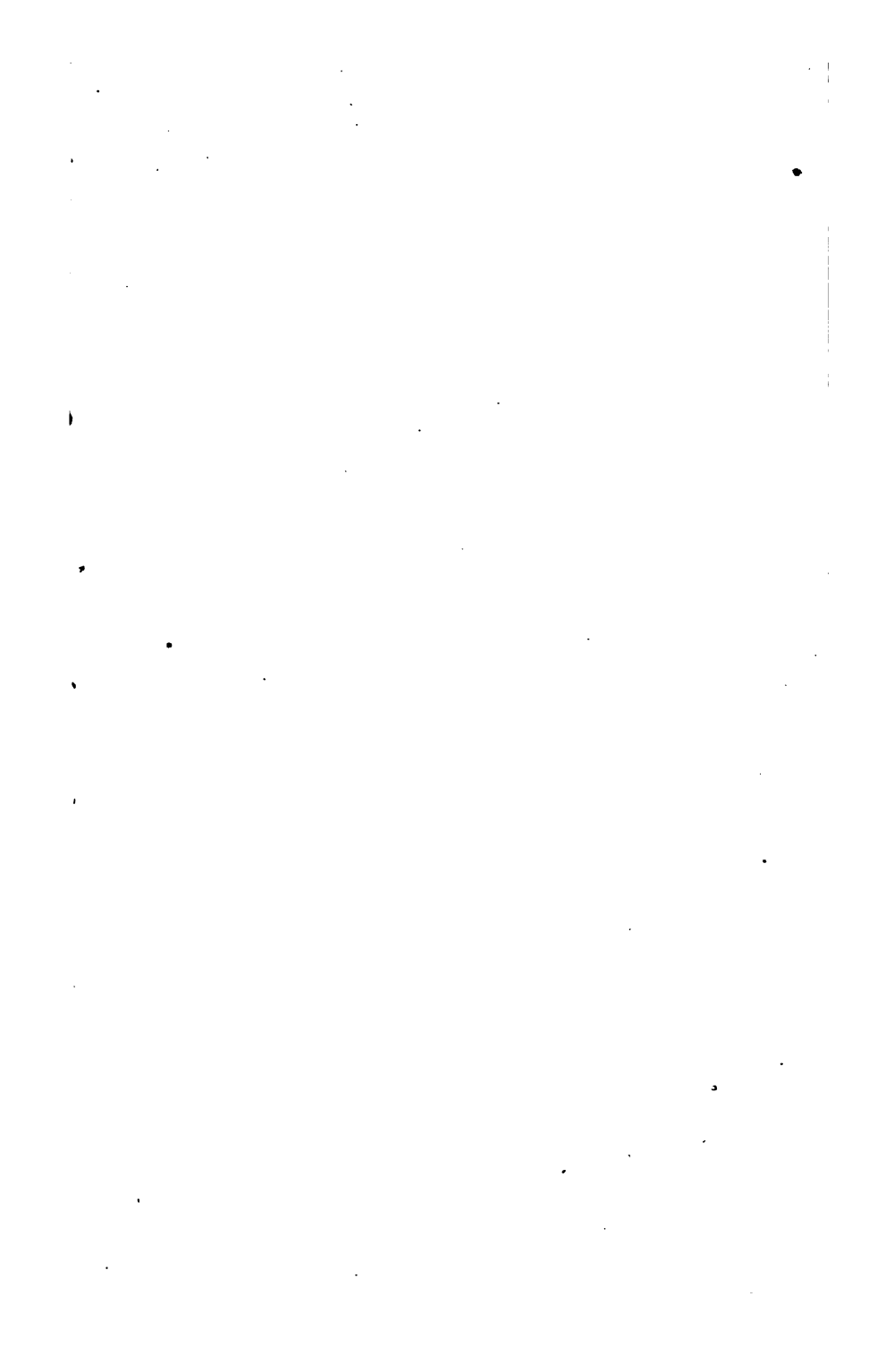
**Acts of the Apostles,** according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D.D., LL.D. With Map. 12mo.

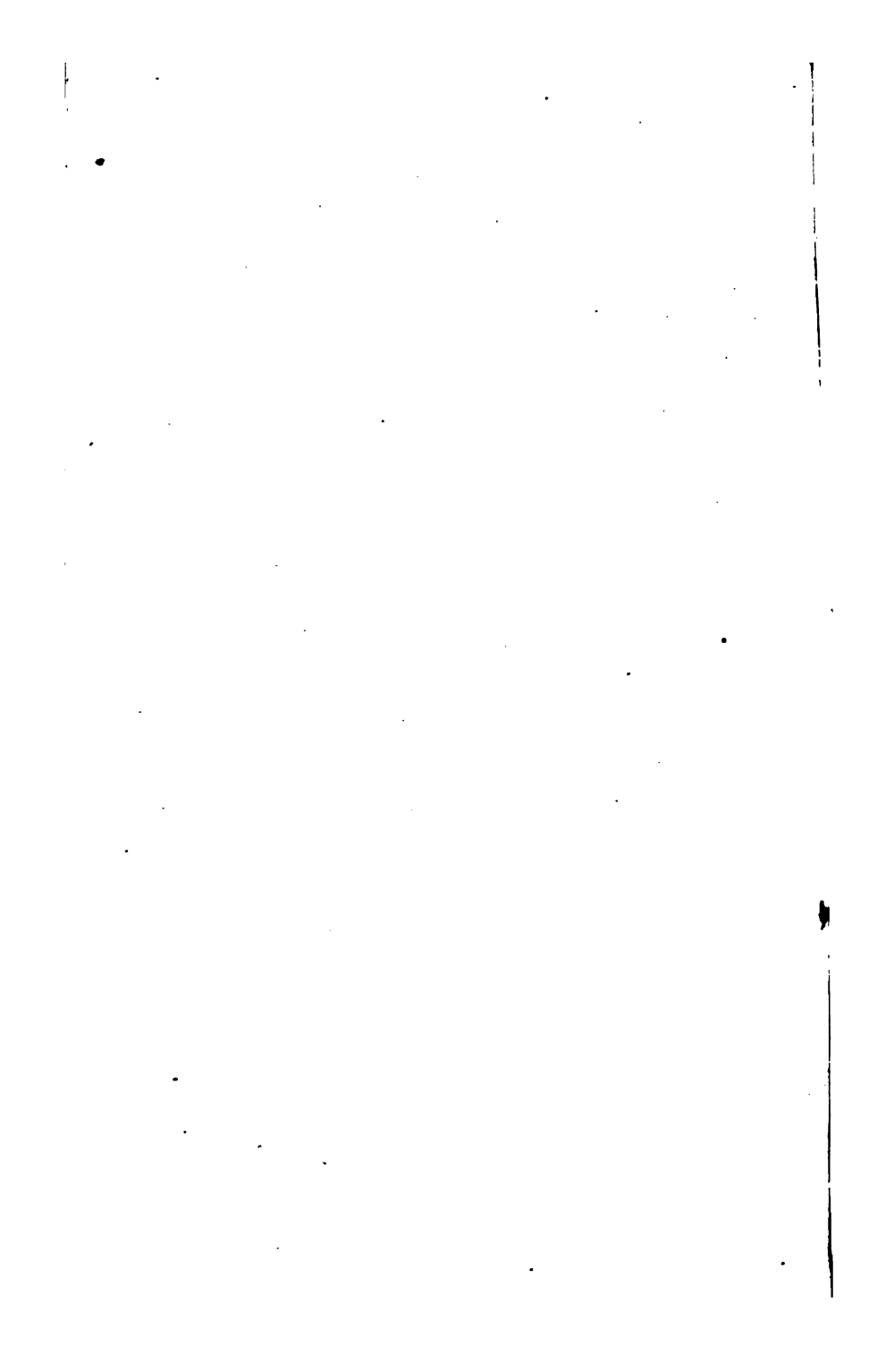
**Arnold's First Greek Book,\*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.\*** 12mo. 297 pages.

——— **Second Part to the above.\*** 12mo. 248 pages.







AN  
INTRODUCTORY  
LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN  
ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,

ON THE  
INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN  
INTRODUCTION

TO THE  
AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY  
ALBERT HARKNESS.

*Revised Edition,*  
ADAPTED TO THE REVISED GRAMMAR.

NEW YORK:  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
549 & 551 BROADWAY.  
1879.



✓  
Educat 918.79.446

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
BY EXCHANGE, FROM  
BROWN UNIVERSITY LIBRARY  
JAN 28 1933

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by  
ALBERT HARKNESS,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

# CONTENTS.

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet . . . . .	1
Sounds of Letters . . . . .	2
Exercise I. . . . .	3
"    II. . . . .	4
"    III. . . . .	5
Syllables . . . . .	6
Quantity . . . . .	6
Accentuation . . . . .	7
Exercise IV. . . . .	7

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### NOUNS.

Gender . . . . .	8
Person and Number . . . . .	9
Cases . . . . .	9
Declensions . . . . .	10
First Declension . . . . .	11
Exercise V. . . . .	11
Second Declension . . . . .	13
Exercise VI. . . . .	14
"    VII. . . . .	16
Third Declension . . . . .	17
Exercise VIII. . . . .	23
"    IX. . . . .	25
Fourth Declension . . . . .	26
Exercise X. . . . .	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension . . . . .	28
Exercise XI. . . . .	29

## CHAPTER II.

### ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions . . . . .	30
Exercise XII. . . . .	33
Third Declension . . . . .	35
Exercise XIII. . . . .	37
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	38
Exercise XIV. . . . .	39
Nominal Adjectives . . . . .	40
Exercise XV. . . . .	42

## CHAPTER III.

### PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns . . . . .	43
Possessive . . . . .	44
Demonstrative . . . . .	44
Relative . . . . .	45
Interrogative . . . . .	46
Indefinite . . . . .	46
Exercise XVI. . . . .	47

## CHAPTER IV.

### VERBS.

Voices . . . . .	48
Moods . . . . .	49
Tenses . . . . .	50
Numbers . . . . .	50
Persons . . . . .	51
Conjugation . . . . .	51
The Verb Sum . . . . .	52
Exercise XVII. . . . .	56
“ XVIII. . . . .	57
“ XIX. . . . .	60
First Conjugation . . . . .	62
Exercise XX. . . . .	66

# CONTENTS.

vii

	Page.
Exercise XXI . . . . .	67
“ XXII. . . . .	69
“ XXIII. . . . .	71
“ XXIV. . . . .	73
“ XXV. . . . .	74
“ XXVI. . . . .	75
“ XXVII. . . . .	76
Second Conjugation . . . . .	78
Exercise XXVIII. . . . .	82
“ XXIX. . . . .	83
“ XXX. . . . .	84
“ XXXI. . . . .	85
“ XXXII. . . . .	86
“ XXXIII. . . . .	87
“ XXXIV. . . . .	88
Third Conjugation . . . . .	90
Exercise XXXV. . . . .	94
“ XXXVI. . . . .	95
“ XXXVII. . . . .	96
“ XXXVIII. . . . .	97
“ XXXIX. . . . .	97
“ XL. . . . .	98
“ XLI. . . . .	99
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	100
Exercise XLII. . . . .	104
“ XLIII. . . . .	104
“ XLIV. . . . .	105
“ XLV. . . . .	106
“ XLVI. . . . .	107
“ XLVII. . . . .	107
“ XLVIII. . . . .	108
Verbs in 10 . . . . .	110
Exercise XLIX. . . . .	112

## PART THIRD.

### SYNTAX.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences . . . . .	114
II. Simple Sentences . . . . .	115

## CHAPTER II.

## SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

Section.	Page.
I. Agreement of Nouns . . . . .	117
Exercise L. . . . .	117
"    LI. . . . .	119
II. Nominative . . . . .	120
Exercise LII. . . . .	120
III. Vocative . . . . .	121
Exercise LIII. . . . .	121
IV. Accusative . . . . .	122
Exercise LIV. . . . .	123
"    LV. . . . .	124
"    LVI. . . . .	125
V. Dative . . . . .	126
Exercise LVII. . . . .	127
"    LVIII. . . . .	129
VI. Genitive . . . . .	130
Exercise LIX. . . . .	131
"    LX. . . . .	132
VII. Ablative . . . . .	133
Exercise LXI. . . . .	135
"    LXII. . . . .	137
"    LXIII. . . . .	138
"    LXIV. . . . .	140
VIII. Cases with Prepositions . . . . .	141
Exercise LXV. . . . .	142
Suggestions to the Learner . . . . .	143
Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . .	147
English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . .	157

## EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

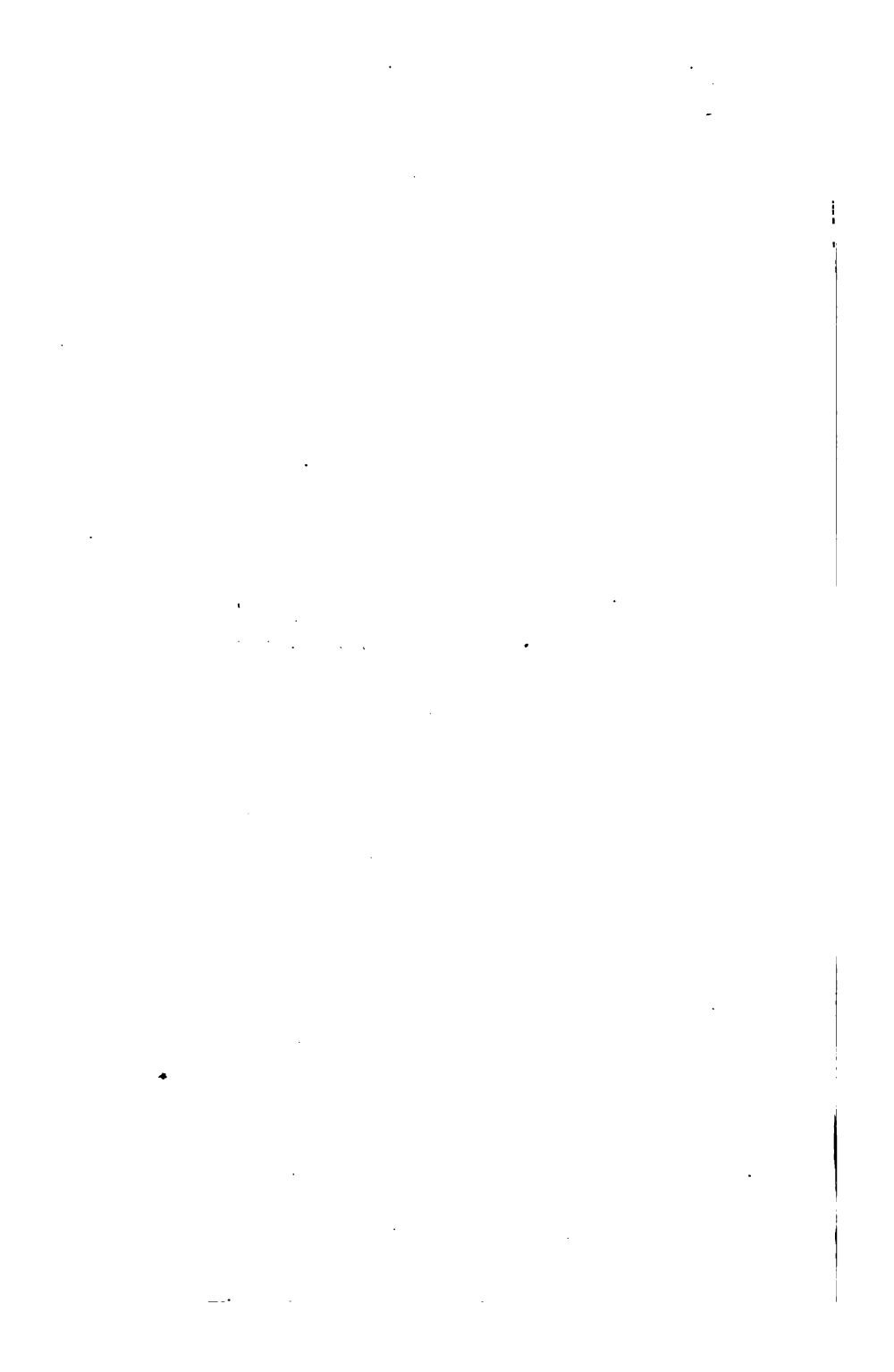
---

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl. . . . .	ablative.	n. . . . .	neuter.
acc. . . . .	accusative.	nom. . . . .	nominative.
act. . . . .	active.	p. . . . .	page.
adv. . . . .	adverb.	part. . . . .	particle.
conj. . . . .	conjunction.	pass. . . . .	passive.
dat. . . . .	dative.	pers. . . . .	person.
f. . . . .	feminine.	plur., or pl. . . . .	plural.
gen. . . . .	genitive.	prep. . . . .	preposition.
indef. . . . .	indefinite.	rel. . . . .	relative.
interrog. . . . .	interrogative.	sing. . . . .	singular.
m. . . . .	masculine.	voc. . . . .	vocative.





# INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

---

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language.

---

## PART FIRST. ORTHOGRAPHY.<sup>1</sup>

---

### ALPHABET.

2. **THE Latin alphabet** is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. **CLASSES OF LETTERS.** — Letters are divided into two classes: —

I. **VOWELS** . . . . . a, c, i, o, u, y.

II. **CONSONANTS:** —

1. *Liquids* . . . . . l, m, n, r.

2. *Spirants* . . . . . h, f, v, j, s.

3. *Mutes*: 1) *Labials* — *lip-letters* . . . b, p, f, v.

2) *Dentals* — *teeth-letters* . . . d, t.

3) *Gutturals* — *throat-letters* . . . c, g, k, q, h.

4. *Double Consonants* . . . . . x, z.

4. **COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS.** — We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*, — combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*, — *x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *sd*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

---

<sup>1</sup> Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

5. PRONUNCIATION. — Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.<sup>1</sup> For the convenience of the *instructor*, we add a brief outline of each.<sup>2</sup>

## ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

### 1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

7. LONG SOUNDS. — Vowels have their long English sounds — *a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type* — in the following situations: —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.<sup>3</sup>

3. In penultimate<sup>4</sup> syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gric'-o-la*.

1) *A* unaccented has the sound of a *final* in *America*: *men'-sa*.

8. SHORT SOUNDS. — Vowels have their short English sounds — *a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth* — in the following situations: —

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

<sup>2</sup> The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

<sup>3</sup> In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. For the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes: thus, *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

<sup>4</sup> Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex'-e'-runt*, *bel'-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But,

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

## 2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

**9. Ae** like *e*: *Cae'-sar*, *Daed'-ä-lus*.<sup>1</sup>

**Oe** like *e*: *Oe'-ta*, *Oed'-i-pus*.<sup>1</sup>

**Au**, as in author: *au'-rum*.

**Eu** . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.<sup>2</sup>

## 3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

10. The consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (*se'do*), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-pi*, *a'-ge* (*a'-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (*ka'-do*), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in *son*, this: *sa'-cer*, *sä'-dus*.

<sup>1</sup> The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 7, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-ä-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*) and *Oed'-i-pus* (*Ed'-i-pus*), according to 8, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

<sup>2</sup> *Ei* and *ui*, when used as diphthongs, have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cui*.

1) *S* final after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hī-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in time: *tī-mor*, *to-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound, like *ks*: *rex-i* (*rek'-si*), *ux'-or* (*uk'-sor*).

12. **C, S, T, X**, aspirated. — Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable, and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated; *c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

#### 4. SYLLABLES.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

#### EXERCISE I.

*Pronounce the following words according to the English Method.*

1. Men'-sam,<sup>1</sup> men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,<sup>2</sup> men-sa'-rum.<sup>3</sup> 2. Ho'-ram,<sup>4</sup> ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,<sup>5</sup> ho-ra'-rum.<sup>6</sup> 3. Scho'-la,<sup>7</sup> scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum. 4. Co-ro'-na,<sup>8</sup> co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.<sup>9</sup> 5. Ci'-vis,<sup>10</sup> civ'-i-um, civ'-i-bus. 6. Car'-men,<sup>11</sup> car'-mi-nis, car'-mi-ne.<sup>12</sup> 7. Rex,<sup>13</sup> re'-gis,<sup>14</sup> re'-gi, re'-gum.<sup>15</sup> 8. A'-ci-em,<sup>16</sup> a'-ci-e, a'-ci-es.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 8, 2; 8, 1.

<sup>6</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>11</sup> 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

<sup>2</sup> 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>7</sup> 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

<sup>12</sup> 11, 4.

<sup>3</sup> 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>8</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>13</sup> 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>4</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>9</sup> 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>14</sup> 8, 3, 1; 12; 8, 1.

<sup>5</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>10</sup> 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

<sup>15</sup> 11, 2, 1).

# ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

## 1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

15. The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.			SHORT.		
ā	like <i>a</i> in father :	ā'-rīs.	ǣ	like <i>a</i> in fast :	ǣ'-mēt.
ē	<i>e</i> made :	ē'-dī.	ĕ	net :	rĕ'-gēt.
ī	<i>e</i> me :	ī'-rī.	ĭ	<i>i</i> divert :	vī'-dēt.
ō	<i>o</i> rode :	ō'-rās.	ŏ	<i>o</i> romance :	mŏ'-nēt.
ū	<i>o</i> do :	ū'-nō.	ŭ	<i>u</i> full :	sŭ'-mūs.

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sŭ'-mūs*.

4. U. — After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *quā* (kwe), *kn'-guā* (lin'-gwa). So also in *cui*, *hut*, *huic*, and sometimes after *s*: *suā'-dē-o* (swa'-de-o).

## 2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

16. In diphthongs, each vowel retains its own sound: —

**ae** (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes): *men'-sae*.<sup>1</sup>

**au** like *ow* in *how*: *cau'-sā*.

**oe** (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin*: *foe'-dūs*.

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tēr*.

## 3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; but the following require special notice: —

**c** like *k* in *king*: *cē'-lēs* (kalas), *cī'-vī* (kewe).

**g** *g* get: *gē'-nūs*, *rĕ'-gis*.

**j** *y* yet: *jā'-cēt* (yaket), *jūs'-sūm*.

**s** *s* son: *sā'-cēr*, *sō'-rōr*.

**t** *t* time: *tī'-mōr*, *tō'-tūs*.

**v** *w* we: *vā'-dūm*, *vī'-ci*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

## 4. SYLLABLES.

18. In dividing words into syllables, make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-rē*, *persuā'-dē*, *men'-sae*.

## EXERCISE II.

*Pronounce the following Words according to the Roman Method.*

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-ris, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vī-ūm, cī'-vī-būs.

## CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

## EXERCISE III.

*Pronounce the following Words according to the Continental Method.*

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-ris, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vī-ūm, cī'-vī-būs.

## QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.<sup>1</sup>

• 21. LONG. — A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. SHORT. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī-ēs*, *vī-ae*, *nī-hīl*.<sup>1</sup>

23. COMMON. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally<sup>2</sup> short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grī*.

1. The signs  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\acute{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\grave{\phantom{a}}$ , are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ā-grō-rūm*.<sup>3</sup>

### ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented<sup>4</sup> on

<sup>1</sup> No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own *nature*; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

<sup>3</sup> By referring to 15 and 19, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (25). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx*, *ūrbs*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity; but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *avē*, *mārē*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 25), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

<sup>4</sup> In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.



the *Penult*,<sup>1</sup> if that is long in quantity; otherwise on the *Antepenult*:<sup>1</sup> *hō-nō'-rīs*, *con'-sū-līs*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent; on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mōn'-u-ē'-runt*; *mōn'-u-ē'-rā'-mūs*; *in-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

#### EXERCISE IV.

*Accent and pronounce the following Words.*<sup>2</sup>

1. *Cōrōnā*,<sup>3</sup> *cōrōnae*, *cōrōnārūm*.<sup>4</sup> 2. *Gemmae*,<sup>5</sup> *gemmām*, *gemmārūm*. 3. *Sāpientiae*,<sup>6</sup> *āmīcītia*, *justītia*, *glōria*.<sup>7</sup> 4. *Sāpientiām*, *āmīcitiām*, *justītiām*, *glōriām*. 5. *Sāpientiā*, *āmīcitiā*, *justītiā*, *glōriā*.

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech<sup>8</sup> are: *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

#### CHAPTER I.

#### NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōmā*, Rome; *dōmūs*, house.

<sup>1</sup> Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

<sup>2</sup> According to the method adopted in the school.

<sup>3</sup> 25; 7, 4, 1).

<sup>5</sup> 11, 1; 24.

<sup>7</sup> 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

<sup>4</sup> 25, 4.

<sup>6</sup> 25, 4; 8, 3, 1); 12.

<sup>8</sup> Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

1. A **PROPER NOUN** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicero*; *Romā*.

2. A **COMMON NOUN** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, a man; *equus*, horse.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case*.

### I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders:<sup>1</sup> *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

#### 42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

##### I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Martiūs*, March.

##### II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mūliēr*, woman; *leaeñā*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees*: *Aegyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, Delos; *pīrūs*, pear-tree.

### II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

---

<sup>1</sup> In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

III. CASES.<sup>1</sup>

45. The Latin has six cases : —

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. OBLIQUE CASES. — The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. LOCATIVE. — The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

## DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND ENDINGS. — The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base, called the stem.

1. MEANING. — Accordingly each case-form contains two distinct elements: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *reg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *reg*; the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. CASES ALIKE. — But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike. and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).<sup>2</sup>

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

---

<sup>1</sup> The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

<sup>2</sup> And in some nouns of Greek origin.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS. — In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows : —

	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC. I.	a	ae
II.	o	i
III.	i or consonant.	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	e	ēi

FIRST DECLENSION. — A Nouns.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

ā and ē, *feminine*; as and es, *masculine*.<sup>1</sup>

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows : —

SINGULAR.			
Example.		Meaning.	Case-Endings.
Nom. mensā,		a table,	ā
Gen. mensae,		of a table,	ae
Dat. mensae,		to, for, a table,	ae
Acc. mensam,		a table,	am
Voc. mensā,		O table,	ā
Abl. mensā,	with, from, by, a table,		ā
PLURAL.			
Nom. mensae,		tables,	ae
Gen. mensarum,		of tables,	arum
Dat. mensis,		to, for, tables,	is
Acc. mensas,		tables,	as
Voc. mensae,		O tables,	ae
Abl. mensis,	with, from, by, tables,		is.

1. STEM. — In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in *a*.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe,

1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.

<sup>1</sup> That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending *a*.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *mensa* decline: —

*Ala*, wing; *āqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a very few other words, have a Locative Singular in *ae*: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *milītia*, in war.

### EXERCISE V.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Amicitia, ae, <sup>1</sup> f. <sup>2</sup>	friendship.
Corōnā, ae, f.	crown.
Gemmā, ae, f.	gem.
Glōriā, ae, f.	glory.
Hōrā, ae, f.	hour.
Iustitiā, ae, f.	justice.
Sāpientiā, ae, f.	wisdom.
Schōlā, ae, f.	school.

#### II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnā,<sup>3</sup> corōnā, corōnae,<sup>4</sup> corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmā, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sāpientiā, amicitia, iustitiā, gloriā. 4. Sāpientiam, amicitiam, iustitiam, gloriam. 5. Sāpientiā, amicitia, iustitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, hōrārum. 7. Scholis, hōris. 8. Scholas, horas.

<sup>1</sup> The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

<sup>2</sup> Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

<sup>3</sup> As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

<sup>4</sup> When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of<sup>1</sup> friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a<sup>2</sup> crown, of a gem. 11. With the<sup>2</sup> crowns, with the gems.

## SECOND DECLENSION. — O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

**ēr, ir, ūs, and os**, masculine; **ŭm, and on**, neuter.

Nouns in *er, ir, us, and um*, are declined as follows:—

*Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.*

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. servŭs</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>āgēr</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>G. servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templī</i>
<i>D. servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>templō</i>
<i>A. servŭm</i>	<i>puērŭm</i>	<i>agrŭm</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>V. servē</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>agēr</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>A. servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>templō</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>G. servōrŭm</i>	<i>puērōrŭm</i>	<i>agrōrŭm</i>	<i>templōrŭm</i>
<i>D. servīs</i>	<i>puērīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>templīs</i>
<i>A. servōs</i>	<i>puērōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>V. servī</i>	<i>puērī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>A. servīs.</i>	<i>puērīs.</i>	<i>agrīs.</i>	<i>templīs.</i>

1. STEM. — In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe,

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of, to, by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

<sup>2</sup> The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a, an, and the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown, a crown, and the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

- 1) That the stems are *servo*, *puĉro*; *agro*, and *templo*.
- 2) That the stem-ending *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*.
- 3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending *o*, are as follows:—

## SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ūs <sup>1</sup>	ŭm
<i>Gen.</i> i	i
<i>Dat.</i> ō	ō
<i>Acc.</i> ŭm	ŭm
<i>Voc.</i> ō <sup>1</sup>	ŭm
<i>Abl.</i> ō	ō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> i	ă
<i>Gen.</i> ōrŭm	ōrŭm
<i>Dat.</i> is	is
<i>Acc.</i> ōs	ă
<i>Voc.</i> i	ă
<i>Abl.</i> is.	is.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *SERVUS*: *dŏminus*, master. Like *PUER*: *ġēner*, son-in-law. Like *AGER*: *măġister*, master. Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

6. LOCATIVE.—Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in *i*: *Cŏrinthi*, at Corinth; *hŭmi*, on the ground.

## EXERCISE VI.

## I. Vocabulary.

<i>Dŏnŭm</i> , i, n.	<i>gift.</i>
<i>Ġēnēr</i> , <i>ġēnērī</i> , m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
<i>Lībēr</i> , <i>lībērī</i> , m.	<i>book.</i>
<i>Ocŭlŭs</i> , i, m.	<i>eye.</i>
<i>Praeceptŭm</i> , i, n.	<i>rule, precept.</i>
<i>Sŏcēr</i> , <i>sŏcērī</i> , m.	<i>father-in-law.</i>
<i>Tŭrannŭs</i> , i, m.	<i>tyrant.</i>
<i>Verbŭm</i> , i, n.	<i>word.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Oculus, oculi, oculo, oculum, ocule, oculorum, oculis, oculos. 2. Socer, soceri, socero, socerum, socerorum, soceris, soceros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Pueri, genēri. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Pučrum, geněrum. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Tempła, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Geněri, generōrum. 13. Agri, agrōrum. 14. Dono, donis. 15. Verbi, praecepti.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves. 3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts.

SECOND DECLENSION. — CONTINUED.

**RULE II. — Appositives.**

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:<sup>1</sup>

Cluilius rex mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* — Liv. Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* — Cic.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline<sup>2</sup> it.

---

<sup>1</sup> A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius, — *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

<sup>2</sup> Adjectives should also be compared (162).



3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,<sup>1</sup> and the Rule for it.

## MODEL.

Artēmisiā rēginā, *Artemisia the queen.*

*Rēginā* is a noun (39) of the First Declension (48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *rēginā* (48, 1). Singular: *rēginā*, *rēgināe*, *rēgināe*, *rēginam*, *rēginā*, *rēginā*. Plural: *rēginae*, *rēginārum*, *rēginis*, *rēginas*, *rēginae*, *rēginis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 42, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in *case*, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

## EXERCISE VII.

## I. Vocabulary.

<i>Caiūs</i> , ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
<i>Filiā</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>daughter.</i>
<i>Hastā</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>spear.</i>
<i>Pisistrātūs</i> , i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
<i>Ramūs</i> , i, <i>m.</i>	<i>branch.</i>
<i>Rēginā</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>queen.</i>
<i>Tulliā</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.

## II. Translate into English.

1. *Ramus*, *hastā*. 2. *Rami*, *hastae*. 3. *Ramo*, *hastae*. 4. *Ramum*, *hastam*. 5. *Ramo*, *hastā*. 6. *Ramōrum*, *hastārum*. 7. *Ramis*, *hastis*. 8. *Ramos*, *hastas*. 9. *Tyranni*, *tyrannōrum*. 10. *Verbum*, *verba*. 11. *Verbo*, *verbis*. 12. *Templum*, *templa*. 13. *Templi*, *templōrum*. 14. *Pisistrātus tyrannus*.<sup>2</sup> 15. *Pisistrāti tyranni*. 16. *Pisistrāto tyranno*. 17. *Tulliā filiā*. 18. *Tulliae filiae*.

<sup>1</sup> By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *rēginā*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

<sup>2</sup> *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.
3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns.
5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns.
7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books.
9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus.
10. Of the queen, for the queen.
11. Caius the slave.
12. Of Caius the slave.
13. For Caius the slave.

THIRD DECLENSION.—CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

**a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.**

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:—

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: **B** or **P**.

Princeps, **m.**,<sup>1</sup>

*a leader, chief.* Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

N. princeps,	<i>a leader,</i>	s
G. principis,	<i>of a leader,</i>	is
D. principī,	<i>to, for, a leader,</i>	i
A. principem,	<i>a leader,</i>	em
V. princeps,	<i>O leader,</i>	s
A. principē,	<i>with, from, by, a leader,</i>	e

PLURAL.

N. principes,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
G. principum,	<i>of leaders,</i>	um
D. principibus,	<i>to, for, leaders,</i>	ibus
A. principes,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
V. principes,	<i>O leaders,</i>	ēs
A. principibus,	<i>with, from, by, leaders,</i>	ibus.

<sup>1</sup> M stands for masculine, F for feminine, and N for neuter.

1. **STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS.** — In this Paradigm observe that the stem is *princēp*, modified before an additional syllable to *princip*, and that the case-endings are appended to the stem without change.

2. **VARIABLE RADICAL VOWEL.** — In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *ē* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and that of *ī* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *principis*, and *jūdex*, *judicis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is *e*, and in *jūdex* *i*.

### 58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: **D** or **T**.

Lapis, *m.*, stone.      Aetas, *f.*, age.      Miles, *m.*, soldier.

#### SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> lapis	aetas	miles
<i>G.</i> lapidis	aetatis	militis
<i>D.</i> lapidi	aetati	militi
<i>A.</i> lapidēm	aetatēm	militēm
<i>V.</i> lapis	aetas	miles
<i>A.</i> lapidē	aetatē	militē

#### PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> lapidēs	aetates	militēs
<i>G.</i> lapidūm	aetatūm	militūm
<i>D.</i> lapidibūs	aetatibūs	militibūs
<i>A.</i> lapidēs	aetates	militēs
<i>V.</i> lapidēs	aetates	militēs
<i>A.</i> lapidibūs.	aetatibūs.	militibūs.

Nepos, *m.*, grandson.      Virtus, *f.*, virtue.      Caput, *n.*, head.

#### SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> nepōs	virtus	capūt
<i>G.</i> nepōtis	virtutis	capitis
<i>D.</i> nepōti	virtuti	capiti
<i>A.</i> nepōtēm	virtutēm	capūt
<i>V.</i> nepōs	virtus	capūt
<i>A.</i> nepōtē	virtutē	capitē

	PLURAL.	
<i>N. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>G. nepōtūm</i>	<i>virtūtūm</i>	<i>capitūm</i>
<i>D. nepōtibūs</i>	<i>virtutibūs</i>	<i>capitibūs</i>
<i>A. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>V. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>A. nepotibūs.</i>	<i>virtutibūs.</i>	<i>capitibūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In these Paradigms observe,
  - 1) That the stems are *lāpīd*, *aetāl*, *mīlīt*, *nēpōt*, *virtūt*, and *cāpūt*.
  - 2) That *mīlēs* has a variable vowel, *ē*, *ī*, and *cāpūt*, *ū*, *ī*.
  - 3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lāpis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetals*, *mīlēs* for *milets*, *virtūs* for *virtuts*.
  - 4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter*, *cāpūt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.
  - 5) That *cāpūt* has no case-ending in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* Sing., but has *ā* in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* Plur.

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: **C** OR **G**.

<i>Rex, M.,</i> <i>king.</i>	<i>Judex, M. &amp; F.,</i> <i>judge.</i>	<i>Radix, F.,</i> <i>root.</i>	<i>Dux, M. &amp; F.,</i> <i>leader.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>N. rex</i>	<i>jūdex</i>	<i>rādix</i>	<i>dux</i>
<i>G. regīs</i>	<i>judicīs</i>	<i>radicīs</i>	<i>ducīs</i>
<i>D. regī</i>	<i>judicī</i>	<i>radicī</i>	<i>ducī</i>
<i>A. regēm</i>	<i>judicēm</i>	<i>radicēm</i>	<i>ducēm</i>
<i>V. rex</i>	<i>judex</i>	<i>radix</i>	<i>dux</i>
<i>A. regē</i>	<i>judicē</i>	<i>radicē</i>	<i>ducē</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>N. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>G. regūm</i>	<i>judicūm</i>	<i>radicūm</i>	<i>ducūm</i>
<i>D. regibūs</i>	<i>judicibūs</i>	<i>radicibūs</i>	<i>ducibūs</i>
<i>A. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>V. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>A. regibūs.</i>	<i>judicibūs.</i>	<i>radicibūs.</i>	<i>ducibūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,
  - 1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdic*, *rādic*, and *dūc* — *jūdic* with the variable vowel — *ī*, *ē*. See 57, 2.
  - 2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That *s* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem, and forms *x*.

60. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID: **L, M, N, OR R.**

Sol, m., <i>sun.</i>	Consul, m., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, m., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, m., <i>father.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. <i>sōl</i>	consul	passer	pater
G. <i>sōlis</i>	consulīs	passerīs	paterīs
D. <i>sōlī</i>	consulī	passerī	paterī
A. <i>sōlēm</i>	consulēm	passerēm	paterēm
V. <i>sōl</i>	consul	passer	pater
A. <i>sōlē</i>	consulē	passerē	paterē

PLURAL.			
N. <i>solēs</i>	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
G. <i>solībūs</i>	consulūm	passerūm	paterūm
D. <i>solībūs</i>	consulībūs	passerībūs	paterībūs
A. <i>solēs</i>	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
V. <i>solēs</i>	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
A. <i>solībūs.</i>	consulībūs.	passerībūs.	paterībūs.

Pastor, m., <i>shepherd.</i>	Leo, m., <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, f., <i>maiden.</i>	Carmen, n., <i>song.</i>
---------------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR.			
N. <i>pastor</i>	leo	virgo	carmen
G. <i>pastoris</i>	leonīs	virginīs	carminīs
D. <i>pastorī</i>	leonī	virginī	carminī
A. <i>pastorēm</i>	leonēm	virginēm	carmen
V. <i>pastor</i>	leo	virgo	carmen
A. <i>pastorē</i>	leonē	virginē	carminē

PLURAL.			
N. <i>pastorēs</i>	leonēs	virginēs	carminā
G. <i>pastorūm</i>	leonūm	virginūm	carminūm
D. <i>pastorībūs</i>	leonībūs	virginībūs	carminībūs
A. <i>pastorēs</i>	leonēs	virginēs	carminā
V. <i>pastorēs</i>	leonēs	virginēs	carminā
A. <i>pastorībūs.</i>	leonībūs.	virginībūs.	carminībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,  
1) That the stems are *sōl*, *consul*, *passer*, *pater*, *pastor*, *leo*,  
*virgō*, and *carmen*.

2) That *virgo* has the variable vowel, *ō*, *ī*; and *carmen*, *ē*, *ī*.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. *s*, the usual case-ending for masculine and feminine nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastor* shortens *o*, while *leōn* and *virgōn* drop *n*.

# 61. STEMS ENDING IN *S*.

Flos, m., <i>flower.</i>	Jus, n., <i>right.</i>	Opus, n., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, n., <i>body.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>N. flōs</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>ōpūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
<i>G. flōrīs</i>	<i>jūrīs</i>	<i>opērīs</i>	<i>corpōrīs</i>
<i>D. flōrī</i>	<i>jūrī</i>	<i>opērī</i>	<i>corpōrī</i>
<i>A. florēm</i>	<i>jus</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
<i>V. flos</i>	<i>jus</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
<i>A. florē</i>	<i>jurē</i>	<i>opērē</i>	<i>corpōrē</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>N. florēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
<i>G. florūm</i>	<i>jurūm</i>	<i>opērūm</i>	<i>corpōrūm</i>
<i>D. florībūs</i>	<i>jurībūs</i>	<i>operībūs</i>	<i>corporībūs</i>
<i>A. florēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
<i>V. florēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
<i>A. florībūs.</i>	<i>jurībūs.</i>	<i>operībūs.</i>	<i>corporībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms observe,
  - 1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *ōpēs*, and *corpōs*.
  - 2) That *ōpūs* has the variable vowel, *ē*, *ū*, and *corpūs*, *ō*, *ū*.
  - 3) That *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*).
  - 4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).

## RULE XVI. — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :<sup>1</sup>

*Cātōnis orātiōnes*, *Cato's orations*. — *Cic. Castra hostium*, *the camp of the enemy*. — *Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris*, *the death of Hamilcar*. — *Liv.*

<sup>1</sup> The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of

## MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōnis ōrātiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

*Cātōnis* is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (39, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant (56, I.): STEM, *Cātōn*; Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped). Singular:<sup>1</sup> *Cato*, *Cātōnis*, *Cātōni*, *Cātōnem*, *Cato*, *Cātōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 42, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *ōrātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

## EXERCISE VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cicērō, Cicērōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cicero</i> , the Roman orator.
Consūl, consūlis, <i>m.</i>	<i>consul</i> . <sup>2</sup>
Exsūl, exsūlis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>exile</i> .
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother</i> .
Lex, lēgis, <i>f.</i>	<i>law</i> .
Nōmēn, nōmīnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>name</i> .
Ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>oration, speech</i> .
Ōrātōr, ōrātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>orator</i> .
Victōr, victōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>victor, conqueror</i> .

another noun: *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius* the king; *Cātōnis oratiōnes*, *Cato's orations*, or the orations of *Cato*. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *Cluilius*, by showing *what* *Cluilius* is meant, — *Cluilius the king*: in a similar manner, the Genitive *Cātōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *oratiōnes*, by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *oratiōnes* and the Genitive *Cātōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

<sup>1</sup> As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

<sup>2</sup> The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Princĭpis, princĭpum. 2. Princĭpem, principes. 3. Miles, milĭtes. 4. Milĭti, milĭtĭbus. 5. Caput, capĭta. 6. Capĭte, capĭtĭbus. 7. Rex, reges. 8. Regis, regum. 9. Consŭli, consulibus. 10. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 11. Virgo, virgĭnis, virgĭnes. 12. Solis, solem, soles. 13. Solibus, consulibus. 14. Patri, pastōri. 15. Patres, pastōres. 16. Carmen, carmĭna. 17. Opĕris, corpōris. 18. Cicerōnis<sup>1</sup> oratio. 19. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 20. Oratiōne consŭlis.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs, names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To the father, to the brother. 13. Kings, laws. 14. Of the king, of the law. 15. Of the kings, of the laws. 16. For the conqueror, of the conqueror. 17. The brother of the conqueror.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN **I** — *Nouns in is, — Abl. Sing. in ĭ, or in ĭ or ĕ.*

Tussis, f., cough.	Turris, f., tower.	Ignis, m., fire.	Case-Endings.
-----------------------	-----------------------	---------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	is
G. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	is
D. tussĭ	turrĭ	ignĭ	i
A. tussĭm	turrĭm, ĕm	ignĕm	ĭm, ĕm
V. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	is
A. tussĭ	turrĭ, ĕ	ignĭ, ĕ	i, ĕ

<sup>1</sup> *Cicerōnis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *oratio*, according to Rule XVI., 395.



## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> <b>tussēs</b>	<b>turrēs</b>	<b>ignēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<i>G.</i> <b>tussiūm</b>	<b>turriūm</b>	<b>igniūm</b>	<b>iūm</b>
<i>D.</i> <b>tussiūs</b>	<b>turriūs</b>	<b>igniūs</b>	<b>iūs</b>
<i>A.</i> <b>tussēs, is</b>	<b>turrēs, is</b>	<b>ignēs, is</b>	<b>ēs, is</b>
<i>V.</i> <b>tussēs</b>	<b>turrēs</b>	<b>ignēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<i>A.</i> <b>tussiūs.</b>	<b>turriūs.</b>	<b>igniūs.</b>	<b>iūs.</b>

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

- 1) That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.
- 2) That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending *i*, which disappears in certain cases.

3) That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Accusative and Ablative Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I** — *Neuters in ē, al, and ar.*

<i>Mare,</i> <i>sea.</i>	<i>Animal,</i> <i>animal.</i>	<i>Calcar,</i> <i>spur.</i>	Case-Endings.
-----------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------

## SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> <b>mārē</b>	<b>ānimāl</b>	<b>calcār</b>	<b>ē — <sup>1</sup></b>
<i>G.</i> <b>maris</b>	<b>animālīs</b>	<b>calcārīs</b>	<b>īs</b>
<i>D.</i> <b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>	<b>calcārī</b>	<b>ī</b>
<i>A.</i> <b>marē</b>	<b>animāl</b>	<b>calcār</b>	<b>ē — <sup>1</sup></b>
<i>V.</i> <b>marē</b>	<b>animāl</b>	<b>calcār</b>	<b>ē — <sup>1</sup></b>
<i>A.</i> <b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>	<b>calcārī</b>	<b>ī</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> <b>marīā</b>	<b>animaliā</b>	<b>calcarīā</b>	<b>iā</b>
<i>G.</i> <b>marīūm</b>	<b>animaliūm</b>	<b>calcarīūm</b>	<b>iūm</b>
<i>D.</i> <b>marībūs</b>	<b>animalībūs</b>	<b>calcarībūs</b>	<b>iūs</b>
<i>A.</i> <b>marīā</b>	<b>animaliā</b>	<b>calcarīā</b>	<b>iā</b>
<i>V.</i> <b>marīā</b>	<b>animaliā</b>	<b>calcarīā</b>	<b>iā</b>
<i>A.</i> <b>marībūs.</b>	<b>animalībūs.</b>	<b>calcarībūs.</b>	<b>iūs.</b>

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

- 1) That the stem-ending *i* is changed to *e* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *māre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ānimāl* (for *animāle*) and *calcār* (for *calcāre*).

2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending *i*.

<sup>1</sup> The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I**. — *Nouns in is, es, and s (x) preceded by a Consonant, — Abl. Sing. in ě.*

Hostis, M. & F., enemy.	Nubes, F., cloud.	Urbs, F., city.	Arx, F., citadel.
----------------------------	----------------------	--------------------	----------------------

## SINGULAR.

N. host <b>is</b>	nūb <b>ēs</b>	urb <b>s</b>	arx <sup>1</sup>
G. host <b>is</b>	nub <b>is</b>	urb <b>is</b>	arc <b>is</b>
D. host <b>i</b>	nub <b>i</b>	urb <b>i</b>	arc <b>i</b>
A. host <b>ēm</b>	nub <b>ēm</b>	urb <b>ēm</b>	arc <b>ēm</b>
V. host <b>is</b>	nub <b>ēs</b>	urb <b>s</b>	arx
A. host <b>ě</b>	nub <b>ě</b>	urb <b>ě</b>	arc <b>ě</b>

## PLURAL.

N. host <b>ēs</b>	nub <b>ēs</b>	urb <b>ēs</b>	arc <b>ēs</b>
G. host <b>iūm</b>	nub <b>iūm</b>	urb <b>iūm</b>	arc <b>iūm</b>
D. host <b>ibūs</b>	nub <b>ibūs</b>	urb <b>ibūs</b>	arc <b>ibūs</b>
A. host <b>ēs, is</b>	nub <b>ēs, is</b>	urb <b>ēs, is</b>	arc <b>ēs, is</b>
V. host <b>ēs</b>	nub <b>ēs</b>	urb <b>ēs</b>	arc <b>ēs</b>
A. host <b>ibūs.</b>	nub <b>ibūs.</b>	urb <b>ibūs.</b>	arc <b>ibūs.</b>

1. STEMS. — These Paradigms show a combination of i-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host*; *urbi, urb*; *arci, arc*. The stem of *nūbēs* seems to be *nūbēs, nūbi, nūb*.

## 67. CASE-ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## SINGULAR.

CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
N. s — <sup>2</sup>	— <sup>2</sup>	is, es, s	ĕ — <sup>2</sup>
G. is	is	is	is
D. i	i	i	i
A. ěm	—	im, ěm	ĕ —
V. s	—	is, es, s	ĕ —
A. ě	ĕ	i, ě	i

<sup>1</sup> X in *arx* = *cs*, — *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nominative ending.

<sup>2</sup> The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>iā</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>ūm</i>	<i>ūm</i>	<i>iūm</i>	<i>iūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs, is</i>	<i>iā</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>iā</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>

## 99. Nouns of the third declension in

**o, or, os, er, and es** increasing in the genitive,<sup>1</sup>  
are masculine: *sermo*, discourse; *dōlōr*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *aggēr*, mound; *pēs*, genitive *pēdis*, foot.

## 105. Nouns of the third declension in

**as, is, ys, x, es** not increasing in the genitive, and **s** preceded by a consonant,  
are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvis*, ship; *chlāmŷs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

## 111. Nouns of the third declension in

**a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us**,  
are neuter: *poēmā*, poem; *mārē*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, animal; *carměn*, song; *cāpūt*, head; *corpūs*, body.

## RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.<sup>2</sup>

*Ad āmicum scripsi, I have written to a friend. — Cic. In cūri-*

<sup>1</sup> That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

<sup>2</sup> The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable, at this early stage of the course, to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

*am*, into the senate-house. — Liv. In Itāliā,<sup>1</sup> in Italy. — Nep. Pro castris, before the camp.

#### MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad āmicūm, To a friend.

*Amicum* is a noun of the Second Declension (51), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *amicō* (51, 1). Singular: *amicus*, *amici*, *amicō*, *amicum*, *amice*, *amīco*. Plural: *amīci*, *amicōrum*, *amīcis*, *amicos*, *amīci*, *amīcis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 51, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

#### EXERCISE IX.

##### I. Vocabulary.

Ad, prep. with acc.	to, towards.
Avis, āvis, f.	bird.
Civis, civis, m. and f.	citizen.
Civitas, civitātis, f.	state.
Contrā, prep. with acc.	against, contrary to.
Mors, mortis, f.	death.
Pax, pācis, f.	peace.

##### II. Translate into English.

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves.
4. Avi, avibus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbibus. 7. Nubēs, milēs.
8. Nubis, militis. 9. Nubem, militem.
10. Rex, judex. 11. Regis, judicis. 12. Reges, iudices.
13. Civitas, civitates. 14. Virtus, virtutes. 15. Mors regis.
16. Morte regis. 17. Mortes regum. 18. Virtus judicis.
19. Pacis gloriā. 20. Ad gloriā.<sup>2</sup> 21. Contra regem.
22. Ad turrim. 23. Contra hostes.

<sup>1</sup> Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

<sup>2</sup> The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Of fire, with fire. 5. Of the animal, for the animals. 6. The law of the state. 7. The laws of the state. 8. Contrary to<sup>1</sup> the law. 9. Contrary to the laws of the state. 10. By the death of the conqueror.

## FOURTH DECLENSION. — U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

**ūs**, — *masculine*; **ū**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows: —

**Fructus, fruit.    Cornu, horn.    Case-Endings.**

## SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ūs	ū
<i>G.</i> fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ūs</b>	ūs	ūs
<i>D.</i> fruct <b>ui</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ui	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct <b>ūm</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ūm	ū
<i>V.</i> fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ūs	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct <b>ū</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	ū	ū

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>uā</b>	ūs	uā
<i>G.</i> fruct <b>uūm</b>	corn <b>uūm</b>	uūm	uūm
<i>D.</i> fruct <b>ibūs</b>	corn <b>ibūs</b>	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs (ūbūs)
<i>A.</i> fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>uā</b>	ūs	uā
<i>V.</i> fruct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>uā</b>	ūs	uā
<i>A.</i> fruct <b>ibūs.</b>	corn <b>ibūs.</b>	ibūs (ūbūs).	ibūs (ūbūs).

1. STEM. — In nouns of the fourth declension the stem ends in **ū**: *fructū*, *cornū*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS. — The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending **ū**, weakened to **i** in *ibūs*, but retained in *ūbūs*.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adventūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>before.</i>
Caesār, Caesāris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Caesar, a Roman surname.</i>
Cantūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>singing, song.</i>
Conspectūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>sight, presence.</i>
Exercitūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
Hostis, hostis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Impētūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>attack.</i>
In, <i>prep.</i>	<i>into with acc., in with abl.</i>
Luscīniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>nightingale.</i>
Occāsūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>the setting, as of the sun.</i>
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>after.</i>
Ver, vēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>spring.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructibus, cantibus. 3. Cantus lusciniæ.<sup>1</sup> 4. Cantu lusciniæ. 5. Cantibus luscīniarum.
6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum<sup>2</sup> veris.<sup>1</sup> 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesāris adventu.
11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impētus hostium. 13. Impētu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercītus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 26.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 26. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the night-ingle. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy. 11. In<sup>1</sup> the city, into<sup>1</sup> the city, for the city. 12. In sight of the king. 13. By the orations of Cicero. 14. Before the death of the king. 15. After the death of Cicero, the consul.

### FIFTH DECLENSION. — E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**, — *femine*, and are declined as follows: <sup>2</sup> —

**Dies, day.<sup>3</sup>    Res, thing.    Case-Endings.**

#### SINGULAR.

<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>D. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>A. diēm</i>	<i>rēm</i>	<i>ēm</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>e</i>

#### PLURAL.

<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diērūm</i>	<i>rērūm</i>	<i>ērūm</i>
<i>D. diēbūs</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>
<i>A. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diēbūs.</i>	<i>rēbūs.</i>	<i>ēbūs.</i>

1. STEM. — The stem of nouns of the fifth declension ends in **ē**: *die, re*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS. — The case-endings here given contain the stem ending **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened

<sup>1</sup> See page 27, foot-note 1.

<sup>2</sup> But nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many admit no plural whatever.

<sup>3</sup> *Dies*, day, is an exception in gender, as it is generally masculine, though sometimes feminine in the singular.

(1) in the ending *eī*,<sup>1</sup> when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ēm*.

EXERCISE XI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Acies, āciēs, f.</i>	<i>battle-array, army.</i>
<i>Amictus, i, m.</i>	<i>friend.</i>
<i>Cibus, i, m.</i>	<i>food.</i>
<i>Dē, prep. with abl.</i>	<i>concerning.</i>
<i>Diēs, diēs, m. and f.</i>	<i>day.</i>
<i>Facies, faciēs, f.</i>	<i>face, appearance.</i>
<i>Nūmērūs, i, m.</i>	<i>number, quantity.</i>
<i>Rēs, rēs, f.</i>	<i>thing, affair.</i>
<i>Spēciēs, spēciēs, f.</i>	<i>appearance.</i>
<i>Spēs, spēi, f.</i>	<i>hope.</i>
<i>Victoriā, ae, f.</i>	<i>victory.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Diēs, diērum, diēbus.* 2. *Aciei, aciem, acie.* 3. *Diem, speciem.* 4. *Die, specie.* 5. *Res, spes.* 6. *Rei, spei.* 7. *Victoriae spes.* 8. *Victoriae spe.* 9. *Diēi horae.* 10. *Numērus diērum.* 11. *Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies.* 12. *Gloriae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi.* 13. *Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.* 14. *De victoria, in mare, ad consulem.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

<sup>1</sup> The learner will notice that *e* in the ending *eī* is long in *diēi*, where it is preceded by a vowel, but short in *rēi*, where it is preceded by a consonant. In both instances, however, the *e* belongs to the stem.



## CHAPTER II.

## ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bōnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension, and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

## A AND O STEMS.

148. *Bōnus*, good.

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bōnŭs</i>	<i>bōnā</i>	<i>bōnŭm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonŭm</i>	<i>bonām</i>	<i>bonŭm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bonē</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonŭm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō;</i>

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonōrŭm</i>	<i>bonārŭm</i>	<i>bonōrŭm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs.</i>

1. *BONUS* is declined in the *Masc.* like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the *Fem.* like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the *Neut.* like *tempium*

of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bōno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bōna* in the Fem.

149. *Liber, free.*

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>libēr</i>	<i>libēră</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>libērō</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>	<i>libērăm</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>libēr</i>	<i>libēră</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>libērō</i>	<i>libēră</i>	<i>libērō ;</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libēră</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>libērōrŭm</i>	<i>libērărŭm</i>	<i>libērōrŭm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>libērōs</i>	<i>libērās</i>	<i>libēră</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libēră</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs.</i>

1. **LIBER** is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

150. *Aeger, sick.*

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegēr</i>	<i>aegră</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>	<i>aegrăm</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegră</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegră</i>	<i>aegrō ;</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegră</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrŭm</i>	<i>aegrărŭm</i>	<i>aegrōrŭm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegră</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegră</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs.</i>

1. **AEGER** is declined in the Masc. like *āger* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

### RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

**438.** An Adjective agrees with its Noun in **GEN-  
DER, NUMBER, and CASE:**

*Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.*<sup>1</sup> — Cic. *Verae amicitiae, true friendships.* — Cic. *Māgister optimus, the best teacher.* — Cic.

#### MODEL FOR PARSING.

*Verae amicitiae, True friendships.*

*Verae* is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): **STEM, vera** (148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in **GEN-  
DER, NUMBER, and CASE.**"

### EXERCISE XII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

<i>Annūlūs, i, m.</i>	<i>ring.</i>
<i>Aureūs, ū, ūm,</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>golden.</i>
<i>Beātūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>happy, blessed.</i>
<i>Bōnūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>good.</i>
<i>Egrēgiūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>
<i>Fidūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>faithful.</i>
<i>Grātūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>acceptable, pleasing.</i>
<i>Magnūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>great.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like **BONUS**: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

<sup>2</sup> The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

Multūs, ū, ūm,	<i>much, many.</i>
Puellā, ae, f.	<i>girl.</i>
Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,	<i>beautiful.</i>
Rēginā, ae, f.	<i>queen.</i>
Rēgnūm, i, n.	<i>kingdom.</i>
Vērūs, ū, ūm,	<i>true.</i>
Vitā, ae, f.	<i>life.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Amīcus fidus.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amīcōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amīcos fidos. 9. Corōnā aureā. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnā aureā. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellā pulchrā. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beātā vitā. 29. Aureus annūlus. 30. Aurei annūli. 31. Magnā gloriā. 32. Egregiā victoriā.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. A true<sup>2</sup> friend. 2. The true<sup>2</sup> friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Veræ amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>2</sup> Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

### THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes : —

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms ; the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows : —

*Acer, sharp.*

#### SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī;</i>

#### PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>acrēs, is</i>	<i>acrēs, is</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows : —

*Tristis, sad.*

*Tristior, more sad.*

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>	*	<i>N. tristior</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>G. tristis</i>	<i>tristis</i>		<i>G. tristioris</i>	<i>tristiōris</i>
<i>D. tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i>		<i>D. tristiorī</i>	<i>tristiōrī</i>
<i>A. tristēm</i>	<i>tristē</i>		<i>A. tristiorēm</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>V. tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>		<i>V. tristior</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>A. tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i> ;		<i>A. tristiorē (ī)</i>	<i>tristiōrē (ī)</i> ;

PLURAL.

<i>N. tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>N. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
<i>G. tristium</i>	<i>tristium</i>	<i>G. tristiorum</i>	<i>tristiōrum</i>
<i>D. tristibus</i>	<i>tristibus</i>	<i>D. tristioribus</i>	<i>tristiōribus</i>
<i>A. tristēs, is</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>A. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
<i>V. tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>V. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
<i>A. tristibus</i>	<i>tristibus.</i>	<i>A. tristioribus</i>	<i>tristiōribus.</i>

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined, in the main, like nouns of the same endings.

156. *Audax, audacious.*

*Felix, happy.*

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>		<i>N. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>G. audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>		<i>G. feliciis</i>	<i>feliciis</i>
<i>D. audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>		<i>D. feliciī</i>	<i>feliciī</i>
<i>A. audācēm</i>	<i>audax</i>		<i>A. felicēm</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>V. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>		<i>V. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>A. audācī (ē)</i>	<i>audācī (ē)</i> ;		<i>A. feliciī (ē)</i>	<i>feliciī (ē)</i> ;

PLURAL.

<i>N. audācēs</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>N. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>G. audacium</i>	<i>audacium</i>	<i>G. felicium</i>	<i>felicium</i>
<i>D. audacibus</i>	<i>audacibus</i>	<i>D. feliciibus</i>	<i>feliciibus</i>
<i>A. audācēs (is)</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>A. felicēs (is)</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>V. audācēs</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>V. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>A. audacibus</i>	<i>audacibus.</i>	<i>A. feliciibus</i>	<i>feliciibus.</i>

157. Amans, *loving*.Prudens, *prudent*.

## SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> amans	amans	<i>N.</i> prudens	prudens
<i>G.</i> amantiſ	amantiſ	<i>G.</i> prudentiſ	prudentiſ
<i>D.</i> amanti	amanti	<i>D.</i> prudenti	prudenti
<i>A.</i> amantiem	amans	<i>A.</i> prudentem	prudens
<i>V.</i> amans	amans	<i>V.</i> prudens	prudens
<i>A.</i> amanti (i)	amantē (i);	<i>A.</i> prudenti (ē)	prudenti (ē);

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> amanteſ	amantiā	<i>N.</i> prudenteſ	prudentiā
<i>G.</i> amantiūm	amantiūm	<i>G.</i> prudentiūm	prudentiūm
<i>D.</i> amantiſ	amantiſ	<i>D.</i> prudentiſ	prudentiſ
<i>A.</i> amanteſ (is)	amantiā	<i>A.</i> prudenteſ (is)	prudentiā
<i>V.</i> amanteſ	amantiā	<i>V.</i> prudenteſ	prudentiā
<i>A.</i> amantiſ	amantiſ.	<i>A.</i> prudentiſ	prudentiſ.

## EXERCISE XIII.

## I. Vocabulary.

Acēr, acris, acrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Animāl, animālīſ, n.	<i>animal.</i>
Brēviſ, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēliſ, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōriſ, m.	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūciſ, m.	<i>leader.</i>
Fertiliſ, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortiſ, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvāliſ, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnīſ, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, f.	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiēſ, sāpiētiſ,	<i>wise.</i>
Singulāriſ, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utiliſ, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolōres acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acribus. 5. Hostis crudēliſ. 6. Hostem crudē-

lem. 7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis<sup>1</sup> fortis. 9. Virtute militum<sup>1</sup> fortium. 10. Ager fertilis. 11. In agro fertili. 12. Agros fertiles. 13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navales. 16. Post pugnas navales. 17. Singularis virtus. 18. Singulari virtute. 19. Omne animal. 20. Omnia animalia.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,<sup>2</sup> high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:—

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON, by adverbs.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

<sup>2</sup> Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a, um*; *alti*, *ae, i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a, um*; *altissimi*, *ae, i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 154: *altior*, *altius*; *altiōris*, etc.



## I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings :—

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issīmūs,	issīmā,	issīmūm :

Altus, altior, altissimus : *high, higher, highest.*

lēvis, levior, levissimus : *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel : *alto, altior, altissimus.*

## II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive :—

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus,

*Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.*

## MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clārīōr, *A more renowned orator.*

*Clarior* is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*. Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clāro*; Comparative, *clarior*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (154). Singular: N. *clarior, clarius*; G. *clariōris, clariōris*, etc.<sup>1</sup> It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.<sup>2</sup>

## EXERCISE XIV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montis, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

<sup>2</sup> Give the Rule.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clarus. 2. Orātor clarior.<sup>1</sup> 3. Orātor clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.<sup>1</sup> 6. Oratōres clarissīmi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beattissima vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissima. 16. Milītes fortissīmi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utilissimis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:—

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>2</sup> *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>2</sup> *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: <sup>2</sup> *singūli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

---

<sup>1</sup> Declined like *tristior*, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII., p. 34.

<sup>2</sup> *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series*: *primus*, first; *secundus*, second. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time: *singūli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two.

## 174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, unā, unūm,	primūs, <i>first</i> ,	singūli, <i>one by one.</i>
2. duō, duae, duō,	secundūs, <i>second</i> ,	bini, <i>two by two.</i>
3. trēs, triā,	tertiūs, <i>third</i> ,	terni (trini).
4. quattuor,	quartūs, <i>fourth</i> ,	quāterni.
5. quinquē,	quintūs, <i>fifth</i> ,	quini.
6. sex,	sextūs,	sēni.
7. septēm,	septimūs,	septēni.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōni.
9. novēm,	nōnūs,	novēni.
10. dēcēm,	dēcimūs,	dēni.
11. undēcim,	undēcimūs,	undēni.
12. duōdēcim,	duōdēcimūs,	duōdēni.
13. trēdēcim, or dēcēm ēt trēs,	tertiūs dēcimūs,	terni dēni.
20. viginti,	vicēsīmūs,	vicēni.
21. { viginti ūnūs,	vicēsīmūs primūs,	vicēni singūli.
{ ūnūs ēt viginti,	ūnūs ēt vicēsīmūs,	singūli ēt vicēni.
30. trigintā,	tricēsīmūs,	tricēni.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmūs,	quinquāgēni.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēni.
200. dūcenti, ac, ā,	dūcentēsīmūs,	dūcēni.
1000. millē,	millēsīmūs,	singulā milliā.

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows : —

Unus, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. ūnūs	unā	unūm	ūni	ūnae	unā	
G. uniūs	uniūs	uniūs	unōrūm	unārūm	unōrūm	
D. unī	unī	unī	unis	unis	unis	
A. unūm	unām	unūm	unōs	unās	unā	
V. unē	unā	unūm	unī	unae	unā	
A. unō	unā	unō;	unis	unis	unis.	

Duo, *two*.Tres, *three*.

N. duō	duae	duō	trēs, <i>m. and f.</i>	triā, <i>n.</i>
G. duōrūm	duārūm	duōrūm	triūm	triūm
D. duōbūs	duābūs	duōbūs	tribūs	tribūs
A. duōs, duō	duās	duō	trēs, tris	triā
V. duō	duae	duō	trēs	triā
A. duōbus	duābūs	duōbūs.	tribūs	tribūs.

176. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dūcenti*, *trēcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

### EXERCISE XV.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Annūs, ī, <i>m</i> .	<i>year.</i>
Classis, classis, <i>f</i> .	<i>fleet.</i>
Fortitūdō, fortitudinis, <i>f</i> .	<i>fortitude, bravery.</i>
Impēriū, ii, <i>n</i> .	<i>reign, power.</i>
Nāvis, nāvis, <i>f</i> .	<i>ship.</i>
Proeliū, ii, <i>n</i> .	<i>battle.</i>
Vīr, vīri, <i>m</i> .	<i>man, hero.</i>

#### II. Translate into English.

1. Unus<sup>1</sup> liber. 2. Duo<sup>1</sup> libri. 3. Liber primus.<sup>1</sup> 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor<sup>2</sup> anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem<sup>2</sup> dies. 14. Decimus dies.<sup>3</sup> 15. Decem horae. 16. Decima hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decimum proelium. 19. Horā diēi decimā.

#### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

<sup>2</sup> The indeclinable numeral adjectives (176) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender and in any case.

<sup>3</sup> *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally *masculine*.

## CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

182. THE PRONOUN is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgō*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:—

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are,—

Ego, *I*.                      Tu, *thou*.                      Sui, *of himself*, etc.<sup>1</sup>

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>ĕgō</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> <i>meī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> <i>mē</i> ;	<i>tē</i> ;	<i>sē</i> ;

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> <i>nostrūm</i> }	<i>vestrūm</i> }	<i>sui</i>
<i>          nostrī</i> }	<i>vestrī</i> }	
<i>Dat.</i> <i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> <i>nōbis.</i>	<i>vōbis.</i>	<i>sē.</i>

4. Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

5. *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From Personal Pronouns are formed the *Possessives*: —

meūs, ā, ūm, <i>my</i> ;	nostēr, trā, trūm, <i>our</i> ;
tuus, a, um, <i>thy, your</i> ;	vester, tra, trum, <i>your</i> ;
suus, a, um, <i>his, her, its</i> ;	suus, a, um, <i>their</i> .

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular, Masculine, generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are, —

*Hic, istē, illē, is, ipsē, idem.*

They are declined as follows, —

### I. *Hic, this.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G. hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>	<i>hārūm</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>
<i>D. huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
<i>A. hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>A. hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i> ;	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i> .

### II. *Istē, that, that of yours.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. istē</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istūd</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>istā</i>
<i>G. istiūs</i>	<i>istiūs</i>	<i>istiūs</i>	<i>istōrūm</i>	<i>istārūm</i>	<i>istōrūm</i>
<i>D. istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
<i>A. istūm</i>	<i>istām</i>	<i>istūd</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>istā</i>
<i>A. istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i> ;	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i> .

### III. *Illē, he or that, is declined like istē.*

<sup>1</sup> The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>Is</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>Id</i>	<i>eī, ii</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>eā</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>	<i>eārūm</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>eūm</i>	<i>eām</i>	<i>Id</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eā</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō;</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs.</i>

V. *Ipsē, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>ipsē</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>	<i>ipsārūm</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsām</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō;</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis.</i>

VI. *Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>idēm</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>	{ <i>eidēm</i>	<i>eaedēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>ejusdēm</i>	<i>ejusdēm</i>	<i>ejusdēm</i>	{ <i>iidēm</i>		
<i>D.</i> <i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eōrundēm</i>	<i>eārundēm</i>	<i>eōrundēm</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>eundēm</i>	<i>eandēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>	{ <i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>eōdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>eōdēm;</i>	{ <i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>
			<i>eosdēm</i>	<i>easdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
			{ <i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
			{ <i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm.</i>

## IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows : —

<sup>1</sup> The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

<sup>2</sup> *Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idem* to *idēm*, and *idem* to *idēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
<i>A.</i> quēm	quām	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
<i>A.</i> quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

## V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are, —

*Quis* and *quī* with their compounds.

### I. *Quis, who, which, what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> quis	quae	quīd	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
<i>A.</i> quēm	quām	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
<i>A.</i> quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

II. *Quī, which, what?* is declined like the *relative qui*.

## VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are, —

*Quis* and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *quī*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. But

1. After *sī, nī, nē*, and *nūm*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *quā*: *sī quae, si quā*.

## EXERCISE XVI.

### I. *Vocabulary.*

Consiliūm, ii, n.	<i>design, plan.</i>
Epistolā, ae, f.	<i>letter.</i>



Ex, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from.</i>
Insulā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>island.</i>
Pārens, pārentis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>parent.</i>
Pars, partis, <i>f.</i>	<i>part, portion.</i>
Pātriā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>country, native country.</i>
Praeclārūs, ū, ūm,	<i>distinguished.</i>
Prātūm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>meadow.</i>
Prō, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>for, in behalf of.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,<sup>1</sup> ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.<sup>1</sup> 6. Meā<sup>2</sup> vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.<sup>2</sup> 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostri<sup>2</sup> consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic<sup>2</sup> puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eodem prato. 22. Quae<sup>2</sup> urbs?

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

<sup>1</sup> See 184, 4. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules.

<sup>2</sup> The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* Pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 34.

## CHAPTER IV.

### VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lĕgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes: —

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*<sup>1</sup> *verbĕrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

#### I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:<sup>2</sup> —

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acting or existing: *păter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amătur*, the son is loved by his father.

#### II. MOODS.

196. Moods<sup>3</sup> are either Definite or Indefinite, —

I. THE DEFINITE OR FINITE MOODS make up the finite verb. They are, —

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD, which either asserts some-

<sup>1</sup> Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

<sup>2</sup> *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts*, or is *acted upon*.

<sup>3</sup> *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

thing as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *lĕgitne*, is he reading?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *let*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. THE INDEFINITE MOODS express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives. They are, —

1. THE INFINITIVE, which, like the English infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *lĕgĕre*, to read.

2. THE GERUND, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. THE SUPINE, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. THE PARTICIPLE, which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future; *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love; and two in the Passive, the Perfect, *amatus*, loved, and the Gerundive,<sup>1</sup> *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

### III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses: —

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION: —

1. Present: *amō*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābām*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābō*, I shall love.

---

<sup>1</sup> Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:—

1. Perfect: *āmāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *āmāvērām*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *āmāvērō*, I shall have loved.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS. — There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,<sup>1</sup> and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.<sup>1</sup>

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ěre,	ire.

201. STEM AND PRINCIPAL PARTS. — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.

202. THE ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.<sup>2</sup>

203. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

<sup>1</sup> As in nouns. See 44.

<sup>2</sup> In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. *Sūm, I am.* — STEMS, *ēs, fu.*<sup>1</sup>

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>sūm,</i>	<i>essē,</i>	<i>fui,</i>	—. <sup>2</sup>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		<i>I am.</i>	PLURAL.	
<i>sūm,</i>	<i>I am,</i>		<i>sūmūs,</i>	<i>we are,</i>
<i>ēs,</i>	<i>thou art,<sup>3</sup></i>		<i>estis,</i>	<i>you are,</i>
<i>est,</i>	<i>he is ;</i>		<i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

		<i>I was.</i>		
<i>ērām,</i>	<i>I was,</i>		<i>ērāmūs,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
<i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>		<i>erātis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
<i>erāt,</i>	<i>he was ;</i>		<i>erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

## FUTURE.

		<i>I shall or will be.</i>		
<i>erō,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>		<i>erimūs,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>
<i>eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>		<i>eritis,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>
<i>erit,</i>	<i>he will be ;</i>		<i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT.

		<i>I have been, was.</i>		
<i>ful,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>		<i>fulmūs,</i>	<i>we have been,</i>
<i>fuiſti,</i>	<i>thou hast been,</i>		<i>fuiſtiſ,</i>	<i>you have been,</i>
<i>fuit,</i>	<i>he has been ;</i>		<i>fuērunt,</i>	} <i>they have been.</i>
			<i>fuērē,</i>	

## PLUPERFECT.

		<i>I had been.</i>		
<i>fuērām,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>		<i>fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>
<i>fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>		<i>fuērātis,</i>	<i>you had been,</i>
<i>fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been ;</i>		<i>fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

		<i>I shall or will have been.</i>		
<i>fuērō,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>		<i>fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall have been,</i>
<i>fuērſi,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>		<i>fuērſiſ,</i>	<i>you will have been.</i>
<i>fuērſit,</i>	<i>he will have been ;</i>		<i>fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Sūm* has two verb-stems, while regular verbs have only one.<sup>2</sup> The supine is wanting in this verb.<sup>3</sup> Or, *you are* : *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be.*<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sim,	<i>I may be,</i>	simūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
sīs,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sītīs,	<i>you may be,</i>
sīt,	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should be.*

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

*I may have been.*

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have been.*

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ēs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estū,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> <sup>2</sup>	estōtē,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essē,	<i>to be.</i>		
PERF. fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. fūtūrūs <sup>3</sup> essē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>	FUT. fūtūrūs, <sup>3</sup>	<i>about to be.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: sit, he may be, may he be, let him be.

<sup>2</sup> The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: esto, thou shalt be, or be thou ; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.

<sup>3</sup> Futūrūs is declined like *bonus* ; N. futūrūs, a, um, G. futūri, ae, i ; so in the Infinitive : futūrūs, a, um esse.

### RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb agrees with its Subject<sup>2</sup> in NUMBER and PERSON:

*Deus mundum aedificāvit,*<sup>3</sup> *God made the world.* Cic. *Ego rēges ejēci, vos tȳrannos intrōdūcītis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

*Thēbāni accūsāti sunt,*<sup>4</sup> *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted—

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

*Discipūlos mōneo,*<sup>5</sup> *ut stūdia āment,*<sup>6</sup> *I instruct pupils to love<sup>6</sup> their studies.* Quint.

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *intrōdūcītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

<sup>4</sup> The verb *accūsāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accūsāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>5</sup> The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you, he, or they*, but must be *I*.

*Ut—ament* means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, they, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

<sup>6</sup> *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

# I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (201).
2. Give the Principal Parts (201), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.<sup>1</sup>
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

## MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

### 1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs<sup>2</sup> ērāmūs,      *We were.*

*Erāmūs* is an intransitive irregular<sup>3</sup> verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, — <sup>4</sup>. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmūs, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmūs* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *First* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

### 2. *Sum without Subject.*<sup>5</sup>

Fuī, *I have been.*

*Fui* is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti*,

<sup>1</sup> That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

<sup>2</sup> *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

<sup>3</sup> Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

<sup>4</sup> The *Supine* is wanting.

<sup>5</sup> That is, without any subject expressed.



*fuit*; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative mood*, *Perfect tense*, *First person*, *Singular number*, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied<sup>1</sup> in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

## EXERCISE XVII.

### I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.<sup>2</sup> 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.<sup>3</sup> 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.<sup>3</sup> 6. Erit, erunt.
7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus.
9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant.
12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus.
16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērim, fuisset.
18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent.
21. Es, este.

### II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He<sup>3</sup> is, they<sup>3</sup> are. 2. He has been, they have been.
3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been.
6. He had been, they had been. 7. I<sup>3</sup> was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been.
9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

<sup>2</sup> In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

<sup>3</sup> The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

**RULE III.—Subject Nominative.**

367. The Subject of a Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb is put in the Nominative:

*Servius*<sup>2</sup> *regnāvit*, *Servius reigned*. Liv. *Pātent portae*, *The gates are open*. Cic. *Rex vicit*, *The king conquered*. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

*Ego rōges ejēci*, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

*Rex vicit*, *The king conquered*.

*Rex* is a noun (39) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant (*x* = *g-s*, of which *s* is the ending, while *g* belongs to the stem. See 56); STEM, *reg*. Singular: *rex*, *regis*, *regi*, *regem*, *rex*, *rege*. Plural: *reges*, *regum*, *regibus*, *reges*, *reges*, *regibus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 42, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III.: "The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative."

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Cātō</i> , <i>Cātōnis</i> , <i>m</i> .	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
<i>Crūdūs</i> , <i>ū</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>unripe</i> .
<i>Diligens</i> , <i>Diligentis</i> ,	<i>diligent</i> .
<i>Discipūlus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> .	<i>pupil</i> .

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ae, f.	Germany.
Jūcundūs, ū, ūm.	pleasant, delightful.
Laudābilis, ē.	praiseworthy, laudable.
Mātūrūs, ū, ūm.	ripe.
Pōmūm, i, n.	fruit.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Pax<sup>1</sup> jucunda<sup>2</sup> est.<sup>3</sup> 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis<sup>4</sup> fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērant. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma mātūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.<sup>5</sup> 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

<sup>1</sup> *Pax* is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

<sup>2</sup> *Jucunda* is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 34.

<sup>3</sup> *Est* is a verb in the Indicative mood, Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

<sup>4</sup> *Utilis* agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

<sup>5</sup> In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

# SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

## RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>1</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,<sup>1</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

### MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

*Nuntius* is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has i in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *nuntio*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntii*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii*, *nuntiōrum*, *nuntiis*, *nuntios*, *nuntii*, *nuntiis*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 51; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. AN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non pauperlātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

<sup>1</sup> Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a noun with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribite*, Is he writing ?  
*Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribū*,  
Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribū*, Is he  
writing ?

## EXERCISE XIX.

### I. Vocabulary.

Ancūs, i, m.	Ancus, Roman king.
Condītōr, condītōris, m.	founder.
Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m.	Demosthenes, Athenian orator.
Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f.	drunkenness.
Graecūs, ū, m.	Greek, Grecian.
Graecus, i, m.	Greek, a Greek.
Insāniā, ae, f.	insanity, madness.
Inventōr, inventōris, m.	inventor.
Mātēr, mātēris, f.	mother.
Mundūs, i, m.	world, universe.
Nonnē, interrog. part.	expects answer yes.
Nūm, interrog. part.	expects answer no.
Philōsōphiā, ae, f.	philosophy.
Rōmā, ae, f.	Rome.
Rōmānūs, ū, m.	Roman.
Rōmānūs, i, m.	Roman, a Roman.
Rōmūlūs, i, m.	Romulus, the founder of Rome.
Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.	Scipio, Roman general.

### II. Translate into English.\*

1. Ancus<sup>2</sup> fuit<sup>3</sup> rex<sup>4</sup>. 2. Nonne<sup>5</sup> Romūlus rex fuērat?
3. Romūlus rex fuērat. 4. Quis condītōr Romae<sup>6</sup> fuit?
5. Romūlus condītōr Romae fuit. 6. Ebriētās est insania.
7. Patria<sup>7</sup> est parens omnium nostrum.<sup>8</sup> 8. Graeci<sup>7</sup> multā  
rum artium<sup>8</sup> inventōres erant. 9. Demosthēnes orātor fuit.

\* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.  
12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicēro clarissim<sup>9</sup>  
orātor fuit. 14. Cantus lusciniæ jucundissim<sup>9</sup> est.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who<sup>10</sup> was the king? <sup>11</sup> 2. Was not<sup>12</sup> Romulus king? <sup>11</sup>  
3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the  
Romans? 5. Was not<sup>12</sup> Scipio the leader of the Romans?  
6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother  
is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys  
will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

<sup>1</sup> In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule III. page 57.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

<sup>4</sup> *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1 above.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 21.

<sup>7</sup> In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

<sup>8</sup> *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

<sup>9</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissim<sup>9</sup>* and *jucundissim<sup>9</sup>* (162)?

<sup>10</sup> See 188.

<sup>11</sup> See Rule I.

<sup>12</sup> *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amō, *I love*. — STEM, *āma*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, am loving, do love.*

## SINGULAR.

amō,	<i>I love,</i>
amās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
amāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>

## PLURAL.

amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>
amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amant,	<i>they love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love.*

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābas,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will love.*

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	amābimūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved.*

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	amāvīmus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvisti,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvīt,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	amāvērunt, ērē,	<i>they have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved.*

amāvērām,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāvērāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	amāvērātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāvērāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	amāvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have loved.*

amāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	amāvērimūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāvēris,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	amāvēritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāvērit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	amāvērint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may love.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
āmēm,	<i>I may love,</i>	āmēmūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
āmēs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>	āmētīs,	<i>you may love,</i>
āmēt,	<i>he may love;</i>	āment,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should love.*

āmārēm,	<i>I might love,</i>	āmārēmūs,	<i>we might love,</i>
āmārēs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	āmārētīs,	<i>you might love,</i>
āmārēt,	<i>he might love;</i>	āmārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

*I may have loved.*

āmāvērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	āmāvērimūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
āmāvēris,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	āmāvēritīs,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
āmāvērit,	<i>he may have loved;</i>	āmāvērint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have loved.*

āmāvissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	āmāvissēmūs,	<i>we might have loved,</i>
āmāvissēs,	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>	āmāvissētīs,	<i>you might have loved,</i>
āmāvissēt,	<i>he might have loved;</i>	āmāvissent,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmā,	<i>love thou;</i>	āmātē,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUT. āmātō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	āmātōtē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
āmātō,	<i>he shall love;</i>	āmantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. āmārē,	<i>to love.</i>
PERF. āmāvissē,	<i>to have loved.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs <sup>1</sup> essē,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. āmans, <sup>2</sup>	<i>loving.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs, <sup>1</sup>	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. āmandī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. āmandō,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. āmandūm,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. āmandō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. āmātūm,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. āmātū,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 148.

<sup>2</sup> Decline like *prudens*, 157.



## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.* — STEM, *āma*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
āmōr,	āmārī,	āmātūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am loved.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
āmōr		āmāmūr
āmāris, or rē		āmāmīni
āmātūr;		āmantūr.
IMPERFECT.		
<i>I was loved.</i>		
āmābār		āmābāmūr
āmābāris, or rē		āmābāmīni
āmābatūr;		āmābantūr.
FUTURE.		
<i>I shall or will be loved.</i>		
āmābōr		āmābīmūr
āmābōris, or rē		āmābīmīni
āmābitūr;		āmābuntūr.
PERFECT.		
<i>I have been or was loved.</i>		
āmātūs sūm <sup>1</sup>		āmātī sūmūs
āmātūs ēs		āmātī estīs
āmātūs est;		āmātī sunt.
PLUPERFECT.		
<i>I had been loved.</i>		
āmātūs ērām <sup>1</sup>		āmātī ērāmūs
āmātūs ērās		āmātī ērātīs
āmātūs ērāt;		āmātī ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
<i>I shall or will have been loved.</i>		
āmātūs ērō <sup>1</sup>		āmātī ērimūs
āmātūs ēris		āmātī ēritīs
āmātūs ērit;		āmātī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Fui, fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum*, *es*, etc.; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuēram, fuēras*, etc., for *ēram, ēras*, etc.; also *fuēro, fuēris*, etc., for *ēro, ēris*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
āmēr	āmēmār
āmērīs, or rē	āmēmīni
āmētūr;	āmentūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should be loved.*

āmārēr	āmārēmār
āmārērīs, or rē	āmārēmīni
āmārētūr;	āmārentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been loved.*

āmātūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	āmāti sīmūs
āmātūs sis	āmāti sitis
āmātūs sit;	āmāti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have been loved.*

āmātūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	āmāti essēmūs
āmātūs essēs	āmāti essētis
āmātūs essēt;	āmāti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmārē, <i>be thou loved;</i>	āmāmīni, <i>be ye loved.</i>
FUT. āmātōr, <i>thou shalt be loved,</i> āmātōr, <i>he shall be loved;</i>	āmantōr, <i>they shall be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES āmāri, <i>to be loved.</i>	
PERF. āmātūs essē, <i>to have been loved.</i>	PERF. āmātūs, <i>having been loved.</i>
FUT. āmātūma iri, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>	GER. <sup>2</sup> āmandūs, <i>to be loved, deserv- ing to be loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Fuērim, fuēris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sīm, sis*, etc. So also *fuisse, fuisses*, etc., for *essem, esses*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> GER. = Gerundive. See 196, 4.

## MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vos laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

*Laudavistis* is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *lauda*. Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavisti, laudāvī, laudavimus, laudavistis, laudaverunt, or laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Second person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vītūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to blame.*

Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to praise.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amas, amābas, amābis.  
3. Amat, amant.<sup>1</sup> 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo, amābam, amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.<sup>1</sup> 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabŷmus. 7. Amāvi, amavĕram, amavĕro. 8. Amāvit, amavĕrat, amavĕrit. 9. Amāvi, amavĭmus. 10. Amavĕram, amāverāmus. 11. Amav-  
čro, amaverĭmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavĕrim, amavis-  
sem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverĭmus, amāvissēmus.  
14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavĕrit,  
amavĕrint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte,  
amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises,  
they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He  
was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising,  
you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved,  
he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I  
shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9.  
Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they  
would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have  
praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### EXERCISE XXI.

#### I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amab-  
ĕris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

---

in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, *o*, *ābam*, *ābo*. Originally, however, these forms had not only *am*, but *ama* in common, as *amo* was originally *ama-o*. This common basis *ama* is the *stem* of the verb. Such forms as *ama-t* and *ama-nt* show the stem in full. They are formed respectively by adding *t* and *nt* to the stem.

<sup>1</sup> Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *bunt* differs from the singular ending *bit*, not only in having *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: *BIT*, *BUNT*.

5. Amabĭtur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabĭmur. 7. Amātus<sup>1</sup> sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti<sup>1</sup> sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amator.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

---

<sup>1</sup> The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION — BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.<sup>1</sup> 2. Laudābo, laudābor.<sup>2</sup> 3. Laudābam, laudābar.<sup>2</sup> 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.<sup>2</sup> 6. Laudat, laudatur.<sup>1</sup> 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabītur. 9. Amet, ametur. 10. Amāret, amārētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavērat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavērit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices, — the Active and the Passive, — and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

<sup>2</sup> Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings, — in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

# FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.<sup>1</sup>

## DIRECT OBJECT.

### RULE V. — Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object<sup>2</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*<sup>3</sup> Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

<sup>1</sup> It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (48, 51). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *salūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

<sup>3</sup> In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world.*

*Mundum* is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *modo*. Singular: *mundus, mundi, mundo, mundum, munde, mundo*. Plural: *mundi, mundorum, mundis, mundos, mundi, mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 51; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Aedificō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to build.
Arō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to plough.
Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to sing.
Italiā, ae, f.	Italy.
Libērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to liberate.
Rēnōvō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to renew.
Spērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to hope.
Tarquīniūs, ii, m.	Tarquinius, Roman king.
Thēmistōclēs, is, m.	Themistocles, Athenian commander.

II. Translate into English.

1. Lusciniā laudo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Lusciniā laudāmus. 3. Lusciniās laudat. 4. Lusciniās laudant. 5. Lusciniā laudatur. 6. Lusciniāe laudantur. 7. Patriā amāmus. 8. Pro patriā<sup>2</sup> pugnābimus.<sup>2</sup> 9. Nonne<sup>3</sup> Themistōcles patriā liberāvit? 10. Patriā liberāvit. 11. Italiā libērāvērunt. 12. Italiā liberāta<sup>4</sup> est. 13. Tarquinius templum aedificā-

<sup>1</sup> *Lusciniā* is the Direct Object of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII. page 26, and vocabulary page 73.

<sup>3</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>4</sup> For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.



vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Templā aedificavērant. 16. Templā aedificāta erant. 17. Templum aedificātum erit. 18. Puērū laudabāmus. 19. Puēri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne<sup>1</sup> bellum renovātum est?

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup> praise the boys?<sup>2</sup> 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not<sup>1</sup> liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

## FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.<sup>3</sup>

### ADVERBS.

### RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs<sup>4</sup> qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes feliciter<sup>4</sup> vivunt, *The wise live happily*. Cic. Facile<sup>4</sup> doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned*. Cic. Haud<sup>4</sup> aliter, *not otherwise*. Virg.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review the Third Declension (55–64).

<sup>4</sup> The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (live happily). *Facile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned (easily, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs felicitēr vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

*Felicitēr* is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI:  
 “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elōquentiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>eloquence.</i>
Expugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to take, take by storm.</i>
Fortitēr, <i>adv.</i>	<i>bravely.</i>
Jūventūs, jūventūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>youth.</i>
Ornō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>
Piētās, piētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i>
Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Servō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>
Volō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fly.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne<sup>1</sup> avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem<sup>2</sup> aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta<sup>3</sup> est. 7. Urbes aedificātae<sup>3</sup> erunt. 8. Milītes fortitēr<sup>4</sup> pugnavērunt. 9. Scipio<sup>5</sup> milītes laudāvit. 10. Scipio<sup>5</sup> milītum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipiōnem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milītes patriam amant. 16. Milītes<sup>5</sup> pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētās puēros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

<sup>4</sup> *Fortitēr*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāvērunt*, according to Rule LI.

<sup>5</sup> In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not<sup>1</sup> love birds?<sup>2</sup>  
 3. We love birds.<sup>3</sup> 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup>  
 save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shep-  
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not  
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens  
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king  
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.<sup>3</sup>

## EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to assemble, call together.
Duplicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to double, increase.
Dux, dūcis, m.	general, leader.
Fidēs, fidēi, f.	faith, fidelity, word, <sup>4</sup> promise.
Fūgō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to rout.
Hōmō, hōmīnis, m.	man.
Sēnātūs, ūs, m.	senate.
Stimulō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to stimulate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes<sup>5</sup> cantum lusciniæ<sup>6</sup> laudant. 2. Cantus lus-  
 ciniaē laudatur. 3. Romūlus exercitū fugat. 4. Nonne

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 120).

<sup>4</sup> To keep one's word, *fidem servāre*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

<sup>5</sup> In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (60), *mīlites* (58), *stimulāvit* (203)?

<sup>6</sup> See Rule XVI. page 21.

exercĭtum fugavĭmus? 5. Exercĭtus fugātus est. 6. Exercĭtus fugātus erit. 7. Consul senātum convocāvit. 8. Senātus convocātus est. 9. Senātus consulem laudāvit. 10. Spes victoriae milĭtes stimulāvit. 11. Numĕrum diĕrum duplicāvi. 12. Numĕrus diĕrum duplicātus est.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.<sup>1</sup> 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.<sup>2</sup>

### EXERCISE XXVI.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibālĭs, m.	<i>Hannibal, Carthaginian general.</i>
Innocens, innocentĭs,	<i>innocent.</i>
Nobilĭs, ĕ,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ū, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occüpō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicūs, ū, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See note 4, preceding page.

<sup>2</sup> The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam<sup>1</sup> ampliabat. 2. Urbem novam ampliabunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram<sup>1</sup> ampliaverat. 4. Urbs pulchra servata<sup>2</sup> est. 5. Hannibal multas civitates occupavit. 6. Judices hominem innocentissimum<sup>3</sup> condemnaverunt. 7. Num Punicum bellum renovatum est? 8. Nonne Punicum bellum renovatum est? 9. Punicum bellum renovatum est. 10. Romani nobilissimas<sup>4</sup> urbes expugnaverunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.<sup>4</sup>

## EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Agis, Agidis, <i>m.</i>	Agis, king of Sparta.
Delectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to delight.
Diligentiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	diligence.
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	not.
Sālūtō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.
Suūs, ū, ūm,	his, her, its, their.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

<sup>2</sup> Why *servata* rather than *servatus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

<sup>4</sup> The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc<sup>1</sup> urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te<sup>2</sup> salutāvit? 4. Pater meus<sup>1</sup> te salutāt. 5. Haec<sup>1</sup> vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos<sup>2</sup> delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se<sup>2</sup> amant. 8. Fratres tui<sup>1</sup> laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos<sup>2</sup> amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos<sup>2</sup> amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not<sup>4</sup> blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not<sup>5</sup> your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not<sup>5</sup> king Agis praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not<sup>4</sup> blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

<sup>1</sup> These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 34. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

<sup>4</sup> When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

<sup>5</sup> Nonne.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise*. — STEM, *mōne*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnitūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I advise.*

## SINGULAR.

mōneō  
mōnēs  
mōnēt ;

## PLURAL.

mōnēmūs  
mōnētis  
mōnent.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*

mōnebām  
mōnebās  
mōnebāt ;

mōnebāmūs  
mōnebātis  
mōnebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

mōnebō  
mōnebis  
mōnebit ;

mōnebimūs  
mōnebitis  
mōnebunt.

## PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*

mōnuī  
mōnuisti  
mōnuīt ;

mōnuimūs  
mōnuistis  
mōnuērunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

mōnuērām  
mōnuērās  
mōnuērāt ;

mōnuērāmūs  
mōnuērātis  
mōnuērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

mōnuērō  
mōnueris  
mōnuerit ;

mōnuērimūs  
mōnueritis  
mōnuerint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may advise.*

## SINGULAR.

mōneām  
mōneās  
mōneāt;

## PLURAL.

mōneāmūs  
mōneātis  
mōneant.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should advise.*

mōnērēm  
mōnērēs  
mōnērēt;

mōnērēmūs  
mōnērētis  
mōnērent.

## PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

mōnuērīm  
mōnuērīs  
mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīmūs  
mōnuērītis  
mōnuērīnt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have advised.*

mōnuissēm  
mōnuissēs  
mōnuissēt;

mōnuissēmūs  
mōnuissētis  
mōnuissent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē,	advise thou;		mōnētē,	advise ye.
FUT. mōnētō,	thou shalt advise,		mōnētōtē,	ye shall advise,
mōnētō,	he shall advise;		mōnentō,	they shall advise

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnērē,	to advise.		PRES. mōnens,	advising.
PERF. mōnuissē,	to have advised.			
FUT. mōnītūrūs	essē, to be		FUT. mōnītūrūs,	about to advise.
	about to advise.			

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. mōnendī,	of advising,			
Dat. mōnendō,	for advising,			
Acc. mōnendūm,	advising,		Acc. mōnītūm,	to advise,
Abl. mōnendō,	by advising.		Abl. mōnītū,	to advise, be advised.



## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.* — STEM, *mōne*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnitūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneōr	mōnēmūr
mōnēris, or rē	mōnēmīni
mōnētūr;	mōnentūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

mōnēbār	mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbāris, or rē	mōnēbāmīni
mōnēbātūr;	mōnēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

mōnēbōr	mōnēbimūr
mōnēbēris, or rē	mōnēbimīni
mōnēbitūr;	mōnēbuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*

mōnitūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	mōnitī sūmūs
mōnitūs es	mōnitī estīs
mōnitūs est;	mōnitī sunt.

## PLUSPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

mōnitūs ērām <sup>1</sup>	mōnitī ērāmus
mōnitūs ēras	mōnitī ērātīs
mōnitūs erāt;	mōnitī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

mōnitūs ērō <sup>1</sup>	mōnitī ērimūs
mōnitūs ēris	mōnitī ēritīs
mōnitūs erit;	mōnitī erunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōnēār	mōnēāmūr
mōnēāris, or rē	mōnēāmīni
mōnēātūr;	mōnēantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should be advised.*

mōnērēr	mōnērēmūr
mōnērēris, or rē	mōnērēmīni
mōnērētūr;	mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

mōnītūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī sīmūs
mōnītūs sis	mōnītī sitis
mōnītūs sīt;	mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have been advised.*

mōnītūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītūs essēs	mōnītī essētis
mōnītūs essēt;	mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, be thou advised;	mōnēmīni, be ye advised.
FUT. mōnētōr, thou shalt be advised,	
mōnētōr, he shall be advised;	mōnentōr, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnēri, to be advised,	PERF. mōnītūs, advised,
PERF. mōnītūs essē, to have been advised,	GER. <sup>1</sup> mōnendūs, to be advised, deserving to be advised.
FUT. mōnītūm iri, to be about to be advised.	

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneĉ, mōnērĉ, mōnui, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreĉ, pārērĉ, pārui, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissēm. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantǎ, ǎrǎ, ǎvi, ǎtǔm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Spǎrǎ, ǎrǎ, ǎvi. ǎtǔm,	<i>to hope.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.<sup>1</sup> 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravēram, paruēram. 12. Speravēro, paruēro. 13. Speravīmus, paruīmus. 14. Speravērat, paruērat. 15. Speravērint, paruērint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations,—the First and the Second,—and should carefully observe the difference between them.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

## OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XXX.

## I. Vocabulary.

Aurūm, i, n.	gold.
Flos, floris, m.	flower.
Hābeō, hābēre, hābuī, hābitūm,	to have, hold.
Mēreō, mērēre, mēruī, mēritūm,	to deserve, merit.
Philosōphus, i, m.	philosopher.
Pondus, ponderis, n.	weight, mass.
Praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitūm,	to furnish, give.
Praemiūm, ii, n.	reward.
Taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūm,	to be silent.
Terreō, terrēre, terruī, territūm,	to frighten, terrify.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros utiles<sup>1</sup> habēmus. 4. Librum utīlem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum<sup>1</sup> amicum habēbis? 6. Bonum amicum habēbo. 7. Bonos amicos habuīmus. 8. Rex amicos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex<sup>2</sup> magnum auri pondus<sup>3</sup> habuērat. 11. Gloriam veram habebitis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philosophus tacēbat. 15. Discipulus praemium meret.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

<sup>2</sup> In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

<sup>3</sup> When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three<sup>1</sup> books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.<sup>2</sup> 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

---

<sup>1</sup> Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

<sup>2</sup> *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnēre, admōnuī, admōnītum,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreō, terrere, terrui, territūm,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitūpērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitābāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabītur, terrebītur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

### EXERCISE XXXIII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Apud, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum,	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
Frater, fratris, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
Māgister, māgistrī, <i>m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
Mēmōriā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
Puer, puērī, <i>m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
Quis, quae, quid, <sup>1</sup>	<i>who, which, what?</i>
Rectē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
Tuus, ū, ūm,	<i>your, yours.</i>

#### II. Translate into English.

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur; 4. Puēri recte monentur. 5. Discipuli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipulus recte monītus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonītus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

<sup>1</sup> For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.



exerceātur.<sup>1</sup> 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified. 3. Let<sup>2</sup> the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself<sup>3</sup> was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XXXIV.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Cāmillŭs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Camillus</i> , Roman general.
Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	<i>to await, expect.</i>
Hostĭs, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Ingens, ingentĭs,	<i>huge, large, great.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>legion, body of soldiers.</i>
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
Nŭmĕrus, <i>m.</i>	<i>number.</i>
Optō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	<i>to wish for, desire.</i>
Pĕcŭniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>money.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Exerceātur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

Philōsōphūs, i, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliūm, ii, n.	<i>batle.</i>
Rōmānūs, i, m.	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērēcundiā, ae, f.	<i>modesty.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt.  
 3. Omnes discipūli paruerant.<sup>1</sup> 4. Romāni hostem expectā-  
 bant. 5. Romāni<sup>2</sup> ingentem hostium numērum<sup>3</sup> expecta-  
 vērant.<sup>1</sup> 6. Hostes proelium expectābant. 7. Praeceptor  
 tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem  
 ornat. 10. Philōsōphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philōs-  
 ōphi pecuniam non optant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you.  
 3. Did you not await the enemy?<sup>4</sup> 4. We awaited the  
 enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a  
 good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave  
 soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He  
 praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We  
 advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?<sup>5</sup>  
 14. They were put to flight.

---

<sup>1</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

<sup>2</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>3</sup> *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

<sup>4</sup> Put the Latin word in the plural.

<sup>5</sup> *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.* — STEM, *reg.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<b>regō,</b>	<b>regēre,</b>	<b>rexī,</b>	<b>rectū.</b>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>regō</b>	<b>regimūs</b>
<b>regis</b>	<b>regitis</b>
<b>regit ;</b>	<b>regunt.</b>

## IMPERFECT

*I was ruling.*

<b>regēbam</b>	<b>regēbāmūs</b>
<b>regēbas</b>	<b>regēbātis</b>
<b>regēbat ;</b>	<b>regēbant.</b>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

<b>regā</b>	<b>regēmūs</b>
<b>regēs</b>	<b>regētis</b>
<b>regēt ;</b>	<b>regent.</b>

## PERFECT.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

<b>rexī</b>	<b>reximūs</b>
<b>rexisti</b>	<b>rexistis</b>
<b>rexit ;</b>	<b>rexerunt, or erāt.</b>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

<b>rexeram</b>	<b>rexerāmūs</b>
<b>rexerās</b>	<b>rexerātis</b>
<b>rexerāt ;</b>	<b>rexerant.</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

<b>rexerō</b>	<b>rexerimūs</b>
<b>rexeris</b>	<b>rexeritis</b>
<b>rexerit ;</b>	<b>rexerint.</b>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may rule.*

SINGULAR.

**rēgām**  
**rēgās**  
**rēgāt;**

PLURAL.

**rēgāmūs**  
**rēgātis**  
**rēgant.**

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should rule.*

**rēgērēm**  
**rēgērēs**  
**rēgēret;**

**rēgērēmūs**  
**rēgērētis**  
**rēgērent.**

PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*

**rexērīm**  
**rexērīs**  
**rexērīt;**

**rexērīmūs**  
**rexērītis**  
**rexērint.**

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have ruled.*

**rexissēm**  
**rexissēs**  
**rexissēt;**

**rexissēmūs**  
**rexissētis**  
**rexissent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. **regē,** rule thou;

**rēgītē,** rule ye.

FUT. **rēgītō,** thou shalt rule,  
**rēgītō,** he shall rule;

**rēgītōtē,** ye shall rule,  
**rēgantō,** they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **rēgērē,** to rule.

PERF. **rexissē,** to have ruled.

FUT. **rectūrūs essē,** to be about  
to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. **rēgens,** ruling.

FUT. **rectūrūs,** about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. **rēgendī,** of ruling,  
Dat. **rēgendō,** for ruling,  
Acc. **rēgendūm,** ruling,  
Abl. **rēgendō,** by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. **rectūm,** to rule,  
Abl. **rectū,** to rule, be ruled.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.* — STEM, *reg*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rēgōr,	rēgī,	rectūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgōr	rēgimūr
rēgēris, or rē	rēgimini
rēgitūr;	rēguntūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*

rēgēbār	rēgēbāmūr
rēgēbāris, or rē	rēgēbāmini
rēgēbātūr;	rēgēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

rēgār	rēgēmūr
rēgēris, or rē	rēgēmini
rēgētūr;	rēgentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*

rectūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	rectī sūmūs
rectūs ēs	rectī estis
rectūs est;	rectī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*

rectūs ērām <sup>1</sup>	rectī ērāmūs
rectūs ērās	rectī ērātis
rectūs ērāt;	rectī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*

rectūs ērō <sup>1</sup>	rectī ērimūs
rectūs ēris	rectī ēritis
rectūs ērit;	rectī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be ruled.*

SINGULAR.

rēgār  
rēgāris, or rō  
rēgātūr;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūr  
rēgāmini  
rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should be ruled.*

rēgērēr  
rēgērēris, or rō  
rēgērētūr;

rēgērēmūr  
rēgērēmini  
rēgērentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rectūs sim<sup>1</sup>  
rectūs sis  
rectūs sit;

recti simūs  
recti sitis  
recti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectūs essēm<sup>1</sup>  
rectūs essēs  
rectūs essēt;

recti essēmūs  
recti essētis  
recti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, be thou ruled; | rēgāmini, be ye ruled.

FUT. rēgītōr, thou shalt be ruled,  
rēgītōr, he shall be ruled; | rēgantōr, they shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, to be ruled.

PERF. rectūs essē, to have been  
ruled.

FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to  
be ruled.

PERF. rectūs, ruled.

GER.<sup>1</sup> rēgendūs, to be ruled.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ēre, duxī, ductūm,	<i>to lead.</i>
Rēgō, ēre, rexī, rectūm,	<i>to rule, govern.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regebam, regam. 2. Regimus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regitis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexero. 9. Reximus, rexerāmus, rexerimus. 10. Regas, regēres, rexeris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexeritis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regeremus, regērem. 14. Rexerit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE  
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicēre, dixī, dictūm,	to say, tell, speak.
Vocō, arē, avi, atūm,	to call.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.<sup>1</sup> 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocavimus, tacuimus, diximus. 6. Vocavi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocaverunt, tacuerunt, dixerunt. 8. Vocaverat, tacuerat, dixerat. 9. Vocaverint, tacuerint, dixerint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocarent, tacerent, dicerent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.



THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.  
OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Animūs, i, m.</i>	<i>mind, passion.</i>
<i>Bēnē, adv.</i>	<i>well.</i>
<i>Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f.</i>	<i>eclipse.</i>
<i>Disertē, adv.</i>	<i>clearly, eloquently.</i>
<i>Edūcō, ēdūcērē, ēduxī, ēductū,</i>	<i>to lead forth.</i>
<i>Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictū,</i>	<i>to declare.</i>
<i>Lātinē, adv.</i>	<i>in Latin.</i>
<i>Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictū,</i>	<i>to predict, foretell.</i>
<i>Sāpientēr, adv.</i>	<i>wisely.</i>
<i>Thālēs, is, m.</i>	<i>Thales, a philosopher.</i>
<i>Tullūs, i, m.</i>	<i>Tullus, a Roman name.</i>
<i>Vērū, i, n.</i>	<i>truth.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicēro in senātu dixērat?  
3. Cicēro diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5.  
Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixē-  
rant. 7. Oratōres Latīne dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes  
eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercitū in Italiā duxit. 10. Quis  
bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales  
dēfectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken  
the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not  
the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the  
army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern  
our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not  
predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The  
Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regīmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regimus, regimur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—  
PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducitur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monīti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monītus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monītus erit, ductus erit.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

## THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XL.

### I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundūs, i, m.	world.
Semper, adv.	always, ever.
Vērūm, i, n.	truth.

### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regetur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Anīmus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum<sup>1</sup> erat. 11. Multa bella indicta<sup>1</sup> sunt.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

<sup>1</sup> Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let<sup>1</sup> the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

## FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

#### EXERCISE XLI.

##### I. Vocabulary.

Gallus, i, m.	Gallus, a proper name.
Hirundō, hirundinis, f.	swallow.
Lūnā, ae, f.	moon.
Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to proclaim, announce
Sensūs, ūs, m.	feeling, perception.
Supplicium, ii, n.	punishment.

##### II. Translate into English.

1. Hirundines adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundines adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipuli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiones solis praedixit. 5. Defectiones lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiones lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

##### III. Translate into Latin.

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

---

<sup>1</sup> Let be spoken, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear*. — STEM, *audi*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audīre,	audivi,	auditum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audimūs
audis	auditis
audit;	audiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmūs
audiēbas	audiēbatis
audiēbat;	audiēbant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

audiām	audiēmūs
audies	audietis
audiet;	audient.

## PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard.*

audivi	audivimūs
audivisti	audivistis
audivit;	audiverunt, or ērūt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audivēram	audivērāmūs
audivērās	audivērātis
audiverāt;	audiverant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

audiverō	audiverimūs
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit;	audiverint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may hear.*

SINGULAR.

**audiām**

**audias**

**audiat ;**

PLURAL.

**audiāmūs**

**audiatīs**

**audiant.**

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should hear.*

**audirēm**

**audirēs**

**audirēt ;**

**audirēmūs**

**audirētīs**

**audirent.**

PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*

**audivērim**

**audivēris**

**audivērit ;**

**audivērimūs**

**audivēritīs**

**audivērint.**

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have heard.*

**audivissēm**

**audivissēs**

**audivissēt ;**

**audivissēmūs**

**audivissētīs**

**audivissent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. **audi**, hear thou ;

FUT. **auditō**, thou shalt hear,  
**auditō**, he shall hear ;

**audite**, hear ye.

**auditōtē**, ye shall hear,  
**audiantō**, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **audire**, to hear.

PERF. **audivisse**, to have heard.

FUT. **auditūrus esse**, to be  
about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. **audiens**, hearing.

FUT. **auditūrus**, about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. **audiendi**, of hearing.

Dat. **audiendō**, for hearing.

Acc. **audiendum**, hearing.

Ab. **audiendō**, by hearing.

SUPINE.

Acc. **auditūm**, to hear.

Ab. **auditū**, to hear, be heard.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard*. — STEM, *audi*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audior,	audiri,	auditus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audior	audimur
audiris, or re	audimini
auditur;	audiuntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiebar	audiebamur
audiebaris, or re	audiebamini
audiebatur;	audiebantur.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

audiar	audiemur
audieris, or re	audiemini
audietur;	audientur.

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*

auditus sum <sup>1</sup>	auditi sumus
auditus es	auditi estis
auditus est;	auditi sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

auditus eram <sup>1</sup>	auditi eramus
auditus eras	auditi eratis
auditus erat;	auditi erant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

auditus ero <sup>1</sup>	auditi erimus
auditus eris	auditi eritis
auditus erit;	auditi erunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be heard.*

SINGULAR.

**audiār**  
**audiāris, or rō**  
**audiātūr;**

PLURAL.

**audiāmūr**  
**audiāmini**  
**audiantūr.**

IMPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should be heard.*

**audirēr**  
**audirēris, or rē**  
**audirētūr;**

**audirēmūr**  
**audirēmini**  
**audirentūr.**

PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

**auditūs sim<sup>1</sup>**  
**auditūs sis**  
**auditūs sit;**

**auditi simūs**  
**auditi sitis**  
**auditi sint.**

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, would, or should have been heard.*

**auditūs essēm<sup>1</sup>**  
**auditūs essēs**  
**auditūs essēt;**

**auditi essēmūs**  
**auditi essētis**  
**auditi essent.**

IMPERATIVE.

**PRES. audirē,** *be thou heard;*

**audimini,** *be ye heard.*

**FUT. auditōr,** *thou shalt be heard,*

**auditōr,** *he shall be heard;*

**audiuntōr,** *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

**PRES. audiri,** *to be heard.*

**PERF. auditūs esse,** *to have been heard.*

**FUT. auditūm iri,** *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

**PERF. auditūs,** *heard.*

**GER.<sup>1</sup> audiendūs,** *to be heard.*

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.



## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to guard.</i>
Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to sleep.</i>
Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to instruct, refine, educate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiebās, audies. 2. Auditis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audīmus. 4. Audiebam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivīmus, audiverāmus, audiverīmus. 7. Audivi, audivēram, audivēro. 8. Audivit, audiverunt. 9. Audiam, audirem, audiverim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverīmus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitabant, admonēbant, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XLIV.

### I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
Mūniō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
Thrāsýbúlus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Thrasybulus, Athenian general.</i>

### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milītes templum custodiunt. 4. Verum audītis. 5. Verum audite. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audimus. 8. Verba mea audivisti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audiui. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum luscinae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybúlus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audimur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiātur, audiantur. 3. Audirer, audirēmur. 4. Auditus sum, auditi sumus. 5. Auditi erāmus, auditus eram. 6. Auditus erit, auditi erunt. 7. Audit, auditur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audirem, audirer. 11. Audiebam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audivit, auditus est. 14. Audivērat, auditus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodīris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitabitur, admonebitur, educētur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabātur, admonebātur, educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonitus sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonīti erant, educti erant, custoditi erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonitus esses, custoditus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, i, n.	war.
Bēnignē, adv.	kindly.
Civilis, ē.	civil.

Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finīō, <i>irē, ivi, itūm,</i>	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgatiō, <i>lēgatiōnis, f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, <i>vōcis, f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vox audita<sup>1</sup> est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus lusciniæ auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur. 5. Urbs munita erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audita est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finitum<sup>1</sup> est.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.<sup>2</sup> 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XLVIII.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēniensis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānis, <i>cānis, m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlō, <i>cōlēre, cōlui, cultūm,</i>	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>2</sup> Let *be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Grex, grēgis, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illustrō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērē, junxi, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābōr, lābōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovis, ōvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prudentiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia puēros ornat. 3. Discipūli memoriā exercent. 4. Discipūli tui memoriā exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventutē erudient. 8. Labor valetudinē tuā firmābit. 9. Variētās nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philo-sophia nos erudit.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always<sup>1</sup> be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who<sup>2</sup> led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

<sup>1</sup> For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

<sup>2</sup> Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

## THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in *io, ior*, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

222. *Cāpio, I take.* — STEM, *cāp.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>cāpiō,</i>	<i>cāpērē,</i>	<i>cēpī,</i>	<i>captūm.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit;</i>	<i>cāpimūs, cāpitīs, cāpiunt.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
<i>cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;</i>	<i>cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbant.</i>
FUTURE.	
<i>cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;</i>	<i>cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.</i>
PERFECT.	
<i>cēpī, -istī, -it;</i>	<i>cēpimūs, -istīs, -erunt, or ērē.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
<i>cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;</i>	<i>cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -erant.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>cēpērō, -erīs, -erīt;</i>	<i>cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;</i>	<i>cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
<i>cāpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;</i>	<i>cāpērēmūs, -ērētīs, -erent.</i>
PERFECT.	
<i>cēpērīm, -erīs, -erīt;</i>	<i>cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
<i>cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;</i>	<i>cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. cāpē;	cāpītē.
FUT. cāpītō,	cāpītōte,
cāpītō;	cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. cāpērē.	PRES. cāpiens.
PERF. cēpiessē.	
FUT. captūrūs essē.	FUT. captūrūs.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. cāpiendī.	
Dat. cāpiendō.	
Acc. cāpiendūm.	Acc. captūm.
Abl. cāpiendō.	Abl. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

223. Capior, *I am taken.* — STEM, *cāp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cāpiōr,	cāpī,	captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiōr, cāpēris, cāpītūr;	cāpīmūr, cāpīmīnī, cāpiuntūr.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpiēbār, -iēbāris, -iēbātūr;	cāpiēbāmūr, -iēbāmīnī, -iēbantūr.
FUTURE.	
cāpiār, -iēris, -iētūr;	cāpiēmūr, -iēmīnī, -ientur.
PERFECT.	
captūs sūm, ēs, est;	captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.	
captūs ērām, ērās, ērāt;	captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
captūs ērō, ēris, ērit;	captī ērimūs, ēritīs, ērunt.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
căpiār, -iāris, -iātūr;			căpiāmūr, -iāmīni, -iantūr.
		IMPERFECT.	
căpērēt, -ērētis, -ērētūr;			căpērēmūr, -ērēmīni, -erentūr.
		PERFECT.	
captūs sīm, sis, sīt;			captī sīmūs, sītīs, sint.
		PLUPERFECT.	
captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;			captī essēmūs, essētīs, essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. căpērē;		căpīmīni.
FUT. căpiūtūr, căpiūtūr;		căpiuntūr.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. căpi.	
PERF. captūs essē.	
FUT. captūm iri.	

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF. captūs.
GER. căpiendūs. <sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE XLIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

A, ūb, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from, by.</i>
Accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellum, i, n.	<i>war.</i>
Căpiō, căpere, cēpi, captum,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāgīnis, f.	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Corneliūs, ii, m.	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, i, m.	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.<sup>2</sup></i>

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

<sup>2</sup> The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jāciō, jācērē, jēci, jactūm,	<i>to cast, throw, hurl.</i>
Lāpis, lāpīdis, <i>m.</i>	<i>stone.</i>
Lux, lūcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>light.</i>
Mūrūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>wall.</i>
Publius, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>Publius, a proper name.</i>
Rēgūlus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Regulus, Roman general.</i>
Telūm, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>javelin.</i>
Trōjā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>Troy, city in Asia Minor</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta<sup>1</sup> est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regūlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis<sup>2</sup> capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accipit. 13. Lucem a sole accipīmus. 14. Tuam<sup>3</sup> epistōlam accēpi. 15. Milītes tela jaciēbant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who<sup>4</sup> took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not<sup>5</sup> received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

<sup>1</sup> For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII., page 26.

<sup>3</sup> What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quis* or *quī*? See 188.

<sup>5</sup> Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

## PART THIRD.

## S Y N T A X.

## CHAPTER I.

## SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

## SECTION I.

## CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought :

*Deus mundum aedificāvit*, *God made the world*. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other :

*Dōnec ēris fēlix, multos nūmērābis āmīcos*; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends*. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example, two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous*," and (2) "*You will number many friends*," are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends*, (when?) *so long as you are prosperous*. The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts :

*Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur*, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded*. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

*Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

*Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty ?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing ?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

*Justitiam cõle, Cultivate justice.* Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

*Reliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left !* Cic.

## SECTION II.

### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

#### ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

*Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, moritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and in *his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

**349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.** — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

**350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.** — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.<sup>1</sup>

#### SIMPLE SUBJECT.

**351.** The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*<sup>2</sup> decrevit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*<sup>2</sup> ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

#### SIMPLE PREDICATE.

**353.** The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

*Miltiades est accusatus*,<sup>3</sup> *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis*, *You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortuna caeca est*, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *moritur*; the complex, in *his castris moritur*.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

<sup>3</sup> In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accusatus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

<sup>4</sup> Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

## CHAPTER II.

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

#### SECTION I.

##### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

#### RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.<sup>1</sup>

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>2</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,<sup>2</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclarātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

#### EXERCISE L.

##### I. Vocabulary.

Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>river.</i>
Creō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Impērātōr, impērātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Lātinūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lāvinia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Mālūm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nōmīnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhēnūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Servius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tūm, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then, at that time.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> See 353, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *consul*<sup>1</sup> fuit.<sup>2</sup> 2. Cicĕro *orātor* fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum<sup>3</sup> erat<sup>2</sup> *orātor* clarissĭmus.<sup>4</sup> 4. Puer *orātor* erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex<sup>1</sup> creātus est. 7. Cato imperātor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperātor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creātus est. 10. Scipio consul fuĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtūtis. 13. Graccia artium<sup>5</sup> mater nominātur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

## APPOSITIVES.

## RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive<sup>6</sup> agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex<sup>6</sup> mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthāgo<sup>6</sup> atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic.

<sup>1</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

<sup>2</sup> For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

<sup>3</sup> Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

<sup>4</sup> See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

<sup>5</sup> *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 21.

<sup>6</sup> See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex, Carthāgo, and Numantia* are all Appositives.

## EXERCISE II.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alexandĕr, Alexandri, <i>m.</i>	<i>Alexander, the Great.</i>
Conjux, conjūgis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>wife, husband.</i>
Epirūs, <i>i, f.</i>	<i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>
Erūditūs, ū, ūm,	<i>learned, instructed in.</i>
Hannō, Hannōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i>
Justūs, ū, ūm,	<i>just, upright.</i>
Mācēdoniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>
Nēpōs, nēpōtis, <i>m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
Paulūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>
Philippūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>
Pyrrhūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
Vulnĕrĕ, ūrĕ, āvi, ūtūm,	<i>to wound.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro, eruditissĭmus *homo*,<sup>1</sup> consul<sup>2</sup> fuit. 2. Numa, justissĭmus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,<sup>1</sup> rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.<sup>3</sup> 5. Pyrrhus, Epĭri rex, vulnerātus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superāvit. 7. Paulus consul<sup>1</sup> regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonārum artium, nos erūdit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia, *the daughter*<sup>1</sup> of Servius, was the wife<sup>2</sup> of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

<sup>1</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

<sup>3</sup> See 222.



## SECTION II.

## NOMINATIVE.

**364. CASES.**—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. <sup>1</sup>

**RULE III.—Subject Nominative.**

**367.** The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

*Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vicit, The king conquered. Liv.*

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

*Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.*

2. SUBJECT OMITTED:—See 460, 2, p. 54.

## EXERCISE LH.

## I. Vocabulary.

<i>Libertās, libertātis, f.</i>	<i>liberty.</i>
<i>Opulētūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>rich, opulent.</i>
<i>Quōtidīc, adv.</i>	<i>daily.</i>
<i>Vitiūm, ii, n.</i>	<i>fault, vice.</i>
<i>Oppidum, i, n.</i>	<i>town, city.</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*<sup>1</sup> liberāta<sup>2</sup> est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberabitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudatur. 6. Virtutes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudata. 8. Libertas semper laudabitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnata sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not, *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

## SECTION III.

## VOCATIVE.

## RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli,<sup>3</sup> *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,<sup>3</sup> *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi,<sup>3</sup> *regnum. The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv.

## EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditōr, auditōris, m.	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ū, ūm,	dear.
Jūvēnis, is, m. and f.	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, ī, m.	ambassador.
Sālūtō, ō, āvi, ūtūm,	to salute.

<sup>1</sup> Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

<sup>2</sup> Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> *Laeli*, *Catīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *To, Scipio*,<sup>1</sup> salutāmus. 2. *Vos, amīci*<sup>1</sup> carissīmi,<sup>2</sup> salūto. 3. *Vos, auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. *Verba mea, iudices*, audite. 5. *Haec verba, legāti*, audite. 6. *Vos, milites*, hanc urbem clarissimam custodite. 7. *Milites*<sup>1</sup> fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. *Vestram virtutem, juvēnes*, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,<sup>1</sup> hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

## SECTION IV.

## ACCUSATIVE.

## RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object<sup>3</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative :

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world.*<sup>4</sup> *Cic. Libēra rem publicam, Free the republic.* *Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, Defend the safety of the Roman people.* *Cic.*

<sup>1</sup> In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way ; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15 ; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.

<sup>3</sup> See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

<sup>4</sup> See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

## EXERCISE LIV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Flāminius, i, m.	Flaminius, Roman general.
Marcellus, i, m.	Marcellus, Roman general.
Poenus, ā, ūm,	Carthaginian.
Poenus, i, m.	a Carthaginian.
Sanctus, ā, ūm,	holy, sacred.
Siciliā, ae, f.	Sicily, the island of.
Spōliū, āre, āvī, ātūm,	to rob, spoil, despoil.
Syrācusae, ārum, f. plur.	Syracuse, city in Sicily.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Alexander multas *urbes*<sup>1</sup> expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliabant. 4. *Templa* sanctissīma spoliaverunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium<sup>1</sup> consulem<sup>2</sup> superavit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupaverant. 7. Marcellus<sup>3</sup> magnam hujus insulae<sup>4</sup> partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracusas,<sup>1</sup> nobilissimam urbem,<sup>2</sup> expugnāvit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Do you not<sup>5</sup> love your *parents*?<sup>1</sup> 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy<sup>6</sup> taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

<sup>1</sup> Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

<sup>3</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>4</sup> *Hujus insulae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1.

<sup>6</sup> The Latin word must be in the plural.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

## RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos,<sup>1</sup> *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōgintā distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caca. Nix quattuor pēdes<sup>1</sup> alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

## EXERCISE LV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggēris, m.	mound, rampart.
Ambūlō, arē, āvi, atūm,	to walk.
Centūm,	hundred.
Glādiūs, ii, m.	sword.
Lācedaemōniūs, ii, m.	a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.
Lātūs, ū, ūm,	broad, wide.
Longūs, ū, ūm,	long.
Mēsis, mēsis, m.	month.
Nox, noctis, f.	night.
Octōgintā,	eighty.
Pēs, pēdis, m.	foot.
Quinquāgintā,	fifty.
Regnō, arē, āvi, atūm,	to reign.
Vigilō, arē, āvi, atūm,	to watch, be awake.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos<sup>2</sup> servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem<sup>2</sup> vigilavēram. 3. Puer octo horas

<sup>1</sup> Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormivit. 4. Latinus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italia sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes<sup>1</sup> latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*. 3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

### ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

#### RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum<sup>2</sup> vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquinios,<sup>3</sup> *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

### EXERCISE LVI.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Athēnac, ārum, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Athens, capital of Attica.</i>
Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgitūm,	<i>to flee, fly, run away.</i>
Lysandēr, Lysandri, <i>m.</i>	<i>Lysander, Spartan general.</i>
Miltiādēs, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>Miltiades, Athenian general.</i>
Nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sail, sail to.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

<sup>2</sup> *Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rēducō, rēducēre, rēdūxi, rēductum,	to lead back.
Rēvocō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to recall.
Spartā, ae, f.	Sparta, capital of Laconia.
Tarentum, i, n.	Tarentum, Italian town.
Thēbanus, ū, ūm,	Theban.
Thēbanus, i, m.	a Theban.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Cicero *Romam*<sup>1</sup> revocatus est. 2. Consules *Romam* revocati sunt. 3. Hannibal *Carthaginem*<sup>1</sup> revocatus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*<sup>1</sup> navigavit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugatus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugavit. 7. Thebani exercitum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiades exercitum Athēnas reduxit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who fled to *Carthage*?<sup>2</sup> 2. Did not the enemy flee to *Carthage*? 3. They fled to *Carthage*. 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome? 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

## SECTION V.

### DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

- I. With Verbs.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

### DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

### RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

#### I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri<sup>1</sup> cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri student, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis<sup>1</sup> vīta dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

#### II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons iter hostibus<sup>2</sup> dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitātibus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

### EXERCISE LVII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniensis, ē,	Carthaginian.
Carthāgīniensis, is, m. and f.	a Carthaginian.
Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, m.	Conon, Athenian gen <sup>l</sup> .
Dēbeđ, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbītūm,	to owe.
Displīceđ, displīcēre, displīcui, displīcītūm,	to displease.
Dōnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to give.
Gens, gentis, f.	race.
Grātīā, ae, f.	favor, gratitude, thanks.
Lābōrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to strive for.

<sup>1</sup> Tempōri, sibi, and labōri are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cēdit*, *timuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nōbis* and *Numītōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *dāta est* and *dēditur*.

<sup>2</sup> Hostibus is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dēdit*. In the same way, *civitātibus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.



Monstrō, ūrē, ūvī, ūtūm,	to show, point out.
Plācēō, plācērē, plācui, plāctūm,	to please.
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, f.	old age.
Sententiā, ac, f.	opinion.
Serviō, servirē, servivī, servitūm,	to serve.
Vīā, ac, f.	way, road.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Cives *legibus*<sup>1</sup> parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitates *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesāri*<sup>1</sup> placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesāri* displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae laborant. 6. Hoc consilium, *Caesāri* nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*<sup>2</sup> magnam *gratiam* habemus. 9. Habeo *senectūti* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civibus donavit. 11. Pastor puero viam monstravit. 12. Tibi viam monstrabo. 13. Romāni Carthaginensibus bellum indixerunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my<sup>3</sup> father?<sup>1</sup> 2. You obeyed your father. 3. We will obey the laws of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the king? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell me (to me<sup>4</sup>) the truth?<sup>5</sup> 9. I have told you (to you) the truth. 10. Will you show

<sup>1</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

<sup>2</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habemus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>3</sup> In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Dative. See Rule XII. II.

<sup>5</sup> Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.  
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.  
 They had declared war against the Romans.

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XIV. — Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

*Patriae solum omnibus<sup>1</sup> carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.*  
 Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.*  
 Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE. — The most common are those signifying :

*Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in bilis.*

## EXERCISE LVIII.

## I. Vocabulary.

<i>Amicus, a, ūm,</i>	<i>friendly.</i>
<i>Hispania, ae, f.</i>	<i>Spain.</i>
<i>Multitudo, multitudinis, f.</i>	<i>multitude.</i>
<i>Saguntum, i, n.</i>	<i>Saguntum, city in Spain.</i>
<i>Similis, e,</i>	<i>like.</i>
<i>Solum, i, n.</i>	<i>soil.</i>
<i>Veritas, veritatis, f.</i>	<i>verity, truth.</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*<sup>1</sup> cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est. 3. Patria *tibi*<sup>1</sup> erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum est. 5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romanis grata fuit. 7. Libertas multitudini grata est. 8. Veritas nobis gratissima est. 9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10. Saguntum Romanis amicum fuit. 11. Hannibal Saguntum,<sup>2</sup> Hispaniae civitatem<sup>3</sup> Romanis<sup>4</sup> amicam,<sup>5</sup> expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are useful *to us*. 3. They will be useful *to you*. 4. This law has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be acceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me. 7. This book will be most acceptable<sup>6</sup> to my brother.

## SECTION VI.

## GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

## GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

## RULE XVI—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

<sup>1</sup> Dative, according to Rule XIV.

<sup>2</sup> Accusative. See Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

<sup>4</sup> Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

<sup>5</sup> *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

<sup>6</sup> See 162.

Catōnis<sup>1</sup> orationēs, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

## EXERCISE LIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, ē,	common.
Conscientiā, ae, f.	consciousness.
Dulcis, ē,	sweet, pleasant.
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	honor.
Orbis, orbis, m.	circle, world.
Orbis terrārū, <sup>2</sup>	the world.
Parvū, ū, m.	small.
Principiū, ii, n.	beginning.
Rectū, i, n.	rectitude, right.
Sōcrātēs, is, m.	Socrates, Athenian philosopher.

## II. Translate into English.

1. *Justitia virtūtum*<sup>3</sup> regina est. 2. *Sapientia est mater omnium bonarum artium*. 3. *Socrātes parens philosophiae* fuit. 4. *Virtus veri honoris*<sup>4</sup> mater est. 5. *Patria communis*<sup>5</sup> est omnium nostrum<sup>6</sup> parens. 6. *Roma orbis*<sup>7</sup> terrarum caput fuit. 7. *Omnium rerum principia parva* sunt. 8. *Conscientia recti est praemium virtutis dulcissimum*.

<sup>1</sup> *Catōnis* qualifies *orationēs*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Literally *the circle of lands*.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive, depending upon *regina*. Rule XVI.

<sup>4</sup> Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

<sup>5</sup> *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

<sup>7</sup> *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārū* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations *of Cicero* are praised.
2. The courage *of the soldiers* saved the city.
3. The crown *of the king* was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XVII.—Genitive.

390. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

*Avidus laudis*,<sup>1</sup> *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otii cupidus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens voluptatis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriæ mēmor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of*, *in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries.

## EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

*Amans, amantis,*

*loving, fond of.*

*Avidus, ū, ūm,*

*desirous of, eager for.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) *of praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *voluptatis*, of *efficiens*; and *gloriae*, of *memor*.

Certāmen, certāminis, <i>n.</i>	<i>contest, strife, battle.</i>
Cūpidūs, ū, ūm,	<i>desirous of.</i>
Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fountain.</i>
Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>	<i>praise.</i>
Nōvītās, nōvītātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>novelty.</i>
Pēritūs, ū, ūm,	<i>skilled in.</i>
Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fish.</i>
Plēnūs, ū, ūm,	<i>full.</i>
Vōluptās, vōluptātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avidi *gloriae*<sup>1</sup> fuerunt. 2. Homīnes *novitātis* avidi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*<sup>1</sup> erat amantissimus.<sup>2</sup> 4. *Patriae* amantissimi sumus. 5. Consul *gloriae* cupidus erat. 6. Cicero *gloriae* cupidissimus<sup>2</sup> fuit. 7. Milites erant avidissimi certāminis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissimi fuerunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of *praise*. 2. Are you not fond of *praise*? 3. We are fond of *praise*. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of *pleasure*? 5. They were always fond of *pleasure*. 6. They are desirous of *glory*. 7. Are you not desirous of a *victory*? 8. We are desirous of a *victory*.

## SECTION VII.

### ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

## RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means<sup>1</sup> are denoted by the Ablative :

*Ars utilitāte laudātur, An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. *Glōriā dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic. *Duōbus modis fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia lūce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Apri dentibus se tūtantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. *Aeger erat vulneribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*,—*mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc.,—occur without such accompaniment :

*Vi summa, With the greatest violence.* Nep. *Mōre Persarum, In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. *Cum silentio audire, To hear in silence.* Liv. *Id ordine facere, To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner, and Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *gloriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis*, manner ; *luce*, means ; *dentibus*, means ; *vulneribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

*Occisus est a Thēbānis, He was slain by the Thebans.*<sup>1</sup> *Nep.*

## EXERCISE LXI.

### I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellis, pellis, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtidianūs, ā, ūm,	<i>daily.</i>
Scythae, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, irē, īvi, itūm,	<i>to clothe.</i>

### II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*<sup>2</sup> laudātus est. 2. Urbs *natūrā*<sup>3</sup> munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*<sup>3</sup> delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli virtūte est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā<sup>4</sup> triumphāvit.<sup>5</sup> 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestiēbant.

<sup>1</sup> By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of Means.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative of Manner.

<sup>5</sup> The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.



III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?<sup>1</sup> 2. The fields are adorned *with beautiful flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.<sup>2</sup> 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

## ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

## RULE XXIII. — Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,<sup>3</sup> *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.  
Quid est melius bonitate,<sup>3</sup> *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM<sup>4</sup> are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi<sup>5</sup> terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause.

<sup>3</sup> *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilius*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

<sup>4</sup> *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

<sup>5</sup> *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

## EXERCISE LXII.

## I. Vocabulary.

Argentūm, i, n.	silver.
Avāritiā ae, f.	avarice.
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	goodness, excellence.
Elōquens, elōquentis,	eloquent.
Ferrūm, i, n.	iron.
Foedūs, ō, ūm,	detestable.
Prētiōsūs, ō, ūm,	valuable.
Quām, conj.	than.
Scientiā, ae, f.	knowledge.
Turris, turris, f.	tower.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Virtus mihi <sup>1</sup> *gloriā* <sup>2</sup> est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* <sup>2</sup> meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā*? 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā*? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpore est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.<sup>3</sup> 8. Quid multitudīni <sup>1</sup> gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.<sup>4</sup> 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes?

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.<sup>2</sup> 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than <sup>5</sup> knowledge. 7. Good-

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XIV. 391.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

<sup>3</sup> In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

<sup>4</sup> Subject of *es* understood.

In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

#### ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

#### RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative : (45, 2).

I. Hannibal in Italiā<sup>1</sup> fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps*. Caca. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis<sup>2</sup> fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmæ<sup>3</sup> fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

#### EXERCISE LXIII.

##### I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, prep. with abl.

from, by.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, f.

Babylon, the city of.

<sup>1</sup> In Italiā, in castris, and in viā designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while ab urbe and ex Africā designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

<sup>2</sup> Athēnis, Bābylōne, and Cōrintho, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while Rōmæ, also the name of a town, is in the Locative, as it is in the Singular of the First declension. See 48, 4.

Cōrinthūs, i, <i>f.</i>	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Diōnysius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to dwell</i> , reside.
Hortūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>garden</i> .
Laetitia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>joy</i> .
Lūcūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>grove</i> .
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>region</i> , territory.
Sēnātor, sēnātoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>senator</i> .
Trigintā,	<i>thirty</i> .

## II. Translate into English.

1. Hannibal *in Hispaniā*<sup>1</sup> fuit. 2. Latīnus *in Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latīnus in illis regionibus regnabat. 4. Cives ab urbe<sup>2</sup> fugiebant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses<sup>3</sup> *Athēnis*<sup>4</sup> fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs fugit. 9. Themistōcles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitabat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*<sup>5</sup> regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Is not your father *in Italy*? 2. My father is *in Greece*. 3. Were you not in Greece? 4. We resided in Greece three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years *at Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter *at Rome*? 13. I received your letter at Corinth.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule VIII.

<sup>4</sup> In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

<sup>5</sup> In the Locative, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

## RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsimo anno<sup>1</sup> est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vere convēnere, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hieme et aestate, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

## EXERCISE LXIV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus, a Roman patriot.</i>
Dēflāgrō, ārcē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Diānā, ac, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
Ephēsīūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>
Hiems, hiēmīs, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālis, ē,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālis diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	<i>Pompey, Roman general.</i>
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribērē, scripsi, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, temporis, n.	<i>time.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Nātāli die<sup>2</sup> tuo scripsisti epistolām. 2. Eōdem die epistolām tuam accēpi.<sup>3</sup> 3. Pompeiūs urbem tertio mense

<sup>1</sup> Anno, vere, diē, hieme, and aestate are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

<sup>3</sup> From accipio.

- cepit. 4. Eōdem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens<sup>1</sup> *at that time*? 2. We were at Corinth<sup>2</sup> *at that time*. 3. Do you not reside in the city<sup>1</sup> *in winter*? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome<sup>2</sup> on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

## SECTION VIII.

### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad āmicum<sup>3</sup> scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house.* Liv. In Italiā, *In Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp.*

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods.* Cic

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sīnc,	tēnus:

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

<sup>2</sup> Locative. See Rule XXVI. II.

<sup>3</sup> The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

### 435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, super:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannibal in Itāliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Itāliā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

## EXERCISE LXV.

### I. Vocabulary.

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
Dīmīcō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
Prospērē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
Prōvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to challenge.</i>

### II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospere pugnāt. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Veritas per se<sup>1</sup> mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabilis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*<sup>2</sup> superāti sunt. 7. Cicero de *amicitiā* scripsit.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

<sup>1</sup> *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render in *itself* or *of itself*.

<sup>2</sup> *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

## SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

---

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

### MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense, etc.*; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensarum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense, etc.*

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.



V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *o* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mensi*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *ama*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *ama*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

### *Model.*

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistocles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: **THEMISTOCLES**.

2) That *libéro*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means *to liberate*: **LIBERATED**.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander*: **THE COMMANDER**.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: **GREECE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all*: **ALL**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitus* means *servitude*: **FROM SERVITUDE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

#### STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*<sup>1</sup> it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

#### *Parsing.*

XVII.<sup>2</sup> In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect<sup>3</sup> it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.<sup>4</sup>
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.<sup>5</sup>

#### TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

<sup>1</sup> It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

<sup>2</sup> These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

<sup>3</sup> Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

<sup>4</sup> That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

<sup>5</sup> For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 27, 34, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

*For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.*

<p style="text-align: center;">A.</p> <p>A, ab, <i>prep. with abl. From, by.</i></p> <p>Accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum. <i>To receive.</i></p> <p>Acēr, acris, acere. <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i></p> <p>Acies, aciei, <i>f. Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i></p> <p>Ad, <i>prep. with acc. To, towards, near.</i></p> <p>Administrō, are, avi, atum. <i>To administer, manage.</i></p> <p>Admonēō, admonere, admonui, admonitum. <i>To admonish.</i></p> <p>Adventus, us, m. <i>Arrival, approach.</i></p> <p>Adversus, <i>prep. with acc. Against.</i></p> <p>Aedificō, are, avi, atum. <i>To build.</i></p> <p>Aestas, aestatis, <i>f. Summer.</i></p> <p>Agēr, agri, m. <i>Field, land.</i></p> <p>Agger, aggeris, m. <i>Mound, rampart.</i></p> <p>Agis, Agdis, m. <i>Agis, a king of Sparta.</i></p> <p>Albanus, a, um. <i>Alban.</i></p> <p>Alexander, Alexandri, m. <i>Alexander, the Great.</i></p> <p>Aliquis, aliquā, aliquod or aliquod. <i>Some, some one.</i></p> <p>Altus, a, um. <i>High, lofty.</i></p> <p>Amans, amantis. <i>Loving, fond of.</i></p>	<p>Ambulō, are, avi, atum. <i>To walk.</i></p> <p>Amicitia, ae, <i>f. Friendship.</i></p> <p>Amicus, a, um. <i>Friendly.</i></p> <p>Amicus, i, m. <i>Friend.</i></p> <p>Amnis, amnis, m. <i>River.</i></p> <p>Amō, are, avi, atum. <i>To love.</i></p> <p>Amor, amoris, m. <i>Love.</i></p> <p>Ampliō, are, avi, atum. <i>To enlarge.</i></p> <p>Ancus, i, m. <i>Ancus, a Roman king.</i></p> <p>Animāl, animalis, n. <i>Animal.</i></p> <p>Animus, i, m. <i>Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i></p> <p>Anulus, i, m. <i>Ring.</i></p> <p>Annus, i, m. <i>Year.</i></p> <p>Antē, <i>prep. with acc. Before.</i></p> <p>Antiquus, a, um. <i>Ancient.</i></p> <p>Apis, apis, <i>f. Bee.</i></p> <p>Appellō, are, avi, atum. <i>To call.</i></p> <p>Appetens, appetentis. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i></p> <p>Apud, <i>prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.</i></p> <p>Apulia, ae, <i>f. Apulia, a country in Italy.</i></p> <p>Arabs, Arabis, m and <i>f. Arab, an Arab.</i></p> <p>Arctē, <i>adv. Closely, soundly.</i></p> <p>Argentum, i, n. <i>Silver.</i></p> <p>Arō, arare, aravi, aratum. <i>To plough.</i></p>
---	--

Arrŏgantĭa, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*  
 Ars, artĭs, *f.* *Art, skill.*  
 Artaxerxēs, is, *m.* *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*  
 Arx, arcis, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*  
 Athēnac, ārtim, *f. plur.* *Athens, the capital of Attica.*  
 Athēniēnsis, ē. *Athenian.*  
 Athēniēnsis, is, *m. and f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*  
 Atticŭs, ī, *m.* *Atticus, a Roman name.*  
 Audiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To hear.*  
 Auditōr, auditōris, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*  
 Aureŭs, ā, ūm. *Golden.*  
 Aurum, ī, *n.* *Gold.*  
 Avārtĭa, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*  
 Avīdŭs, ā, ūm. *Desirous of, eager for.*  
 Avis, āvis, *f.* *Bird.*

## B.

Bābŭlōn, Bābŭlōnis, *f.* *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*  
 Beātŭs, ā, ūm. *Happy, blessed.*  
 Bellum, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*  
 Bēnē, adv. *Well.*  
 Bēnignē, adv. *Kindly.*  
 Bōnĭtās, bōnĭtātis, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*  
 Bōnŭs, ā, ūm. *Good.*  
 Brēvis, ē. *Short, brief.*  
 Brŭtŭs, ī, *m.* *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

## C.

Caesār, Caesārĭs, *m.* *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*  
 Cāius, ii, *m.* *Caius, a proper name.*

Cāmīllŭs, ī, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*  
 Campŭs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*  
 Cānis, cānis, *m. and f.* *Dog.*  
 Cantō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To sing.*  
 Cantŭs, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*  
 Cāpiō, cāpēre, cēpi, captum. *To take, capture.*  
 Cāpit, cāpitŭs, *n.* *Head, capital.*  
 Carmēn, carmĭnis, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*  
 Carthāgĭniēnsis, ē. *Carthaginian.*  
 Carthāgĭniēnsis, is, *m. and f.* *A Carthaginian.*  
 Carthāgō, Carthāgĭnis, *f.* *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*  
 Carthāgō Nŏvā. *New Carthage, Carthage, a city of Spain.*  
 Cārŭs, ā, ūm. *Dear.*  
 Cātō, Cātōnis, *m.* *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*  
 Centŭm. *One hundred. Sec 176.*  
 Certāmen, certāmĭnis, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*  
 Cībŭs, ī, *m.* *Food.*  
 Cīcērō, Cīcērōnis, *m.* *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*  
 Cīvilis, ē. *Civil.*  
 Cīvis, cīvis, *m. and f.* *Citizen.*  
 Cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātis, *f.* *State, city.*  
 Clārŭs, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*  
 Classis, classis, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*  
 Coercēō, coercēre, coercui, coercitum. *To check.*  
 Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultum. *To practise, cultivate.*  
 Commŭnis, ē. *Common.*  
 Condemnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To condemn.*  
 Condītōr, condītōris, *m.* *Founder.*  
 Conjux, conjūgis, *m. and f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, *m.* *Conon*, an Athenian general.  
 Conscientiā, *ac, f.* *Consciousness.*  
 Consiliū, *ii, n.* *Design, plan.*  
 Conspectūs, *ūs, m.* *Sight, view, presence.*  
 Consūl, consūlīs, *m.* *Consul.*  
 Contrā, *prep. with acc.* *Against, opposite to, contrary to.*  
 Convocō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To assemble, call together.*  
 Cōrīnthūs, *i, f.* *Corinth*, city in Greece.  
 Cornēliūs, *ii, m.* *Cornelius*, a Roman name.  
 Cōrōnā, *ac, f.* *Crown.*  
 Corpūs, corpōrīs, *n.* *Body, person.*  
 Creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To create, make, appoint, elect.*  
 Crūdēlīs, *ē.* *Cruel.*  
 Crūdūs, *ū, ūm.* *Unripe.*  
 Culpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To blame.*  
 Cūm, *prep. with abl.* *With.*  
 Cūpldūs, *ū, ūm.* *Desirous of.*  
 Cūrēs, Cūrītūm, *m. plur.* *Cures*, a Sabine town.  
 Custōdiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To guard.*  
 Custōs, custōdīs, *m. and f.* *Keeper, guard.*

*D.*

Dē, *prep. with abl.* *Concerning.*  
 Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbuī, dēbītūm. *To owe.*  
 Dēcīm. *Ten.* See 176.  
 Dēcīmūs, *ū, ūm.* *Tenth.*  
 Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnīs, *f.* *Eclipse.*  
 Dēflāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To burn, be consumed.*  
 Dēlectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To delight, please.*  
 Dēmārātūs, *i, m.* *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.

Dēmōsthēnēs, *is, m.* *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.  
 Diānā, *ac, f.* *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.  
 Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm. *To say, speak, tell.*  
 Diēs, diēi, *m.* *Day.* See 120, note.  
 Dīlgens, dīlgentīs. *Diligent.*  
 Dīlgentiā, *ac, f.* *Diligence.*  
 Dīmīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To fight.*  
 Dīōnysīūs, *ii, m.* *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.  
 Discīptūlūs, *i, m.* *Pupil.*  
 Dīsertē, *adv.* *Clearly, eloquently.*  
 Displicēō, displicērē, displicuī, displicītūm. *To displease.*  
 Divīnūs, *ū, ūm.* *Divine.*  
 Dōlōr, dōlōrīs, *m.* *Pain, grief, suffering.*  
 Dōnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To give, present.*  
 Dōnūm, *i, n.* *Gift.*  
 Dormiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To sleep.*  
 Drācō, Drācōnīs, *m.* *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.  
 Dūcentī, *ac, ū.* *Two hundred.*  
 Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm. *To lead.*  
 Dulcīs, *ē.* *Sweet, pleasant.*  
 Duō, *ac, ū.* *Two.* See 175.  
 Dūplicēō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To double, increase.*  
 Dux, dūcīs, *m. and f.* *Leader, general.*

*E.*

E, ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*  
 Ebriētās, ēbriētātīs, *f.* *Drunkenness.*  
 Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductūm. *To lead forth, lead out.*  
 Effūgiō, effūgērē, effūgi, effūgītūm. *To escape.*  
 Egō, meī. *I.* See 184.

Egrēgius, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*  
 Egrēgiē, adv. *Excellently.*  
 Elēphantus, i, m. *Elephant.*  
 Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*  
 Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*  
 Ephēsius, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*  
 Epīrus, i, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*  
 Epistolā, ae, f. *Letter.*  
 Erudiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To instruct, refine, educate.*  
 Eruditus, ā, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*  
 Ex, prep. with abl. *From.*  
 Exercēō, exercērē, exercui, exercitum. *To exercise, train.*  
 Exercitus, ūs, m. *Army.*  
 Expugnō, arē, āvi, ātum. *To take, take by storm.*  
 Expectō, arē, āvi, ātum. *To await, expect.*  
 Exstul, exstulit, m. and f. *Exile.*

## F.

Faciēs, faciēi, f. *Face, appearance.*  
 Ferrum, i, n. *Iron.*  
 Fertilis, ē. *Fertile.*  
 Fidēlitās, fidēlitātis, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*  
 Fidēs, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*  
 Fidus, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*  
 Filiā, ae, f. *Daughter.*  
 Filius, ii, m. *Son.*  
 Finiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To finish, bring to a close.*  
 Finis, finis, m. *Limit, territory.*  
 Firmō, arē, āvi, ātum. *To strengthen, confirm.*  
 Flāminius, ii, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*  
 Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*  
 Foedus, ā, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontis, m. *Fountain.*  
 Fortis, ē. *Brave.*  
 Fortitēr, adv. *Bravely.*  
 Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*  
 Fossā, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*  
 Frāter, frātris, m. *Brother.*  
 Fructus, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*  
 Frumentum, i, n. *Corn, grain.*  
 Fugā, ae, f. *Flight.*  
 Fugiō, fugērē, fugi, fugitum. *To flee, fly, run away.*  
 Fugō, arē, āvi, ātum. *To rout, drive away.*  
 Fūnestus, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*  
 Fūrōr, fūrōris, m. *Madness, insanity.*

## G.

Gallus, i, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*  
 Gallus, i, m. *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*  
 Gemmā, ae, f. *Gem.*  
 Gēnēr, gēnēri, m. *Son-in-law.*  
 Gens, gentis, f. *Race.*  
 Germāniā, ae, f. *Germany.*  
 Glādius, ii, m. *Sword.*  
 Glōbōsus, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*  
 Glōriā, ae, f. *Glory.*  
 Graeciā, ae, f. *Greece.*  
 Graecus, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*  
 Graecus, i, m. *Greek, a Greek.*  
 Grātiā, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*  
 Grātus, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*  
 Grex, grēgis, m. *Herd, flock.*

## II.

Hābēō, hābērē, hābui, hābītum. *To have, hold.*  
 Hābitō, arē, āvi, ātum. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.

Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.

Hastā, *ae, f.* *Spear.*

Hic, haec, hoc. *This.*

Hiems, hiēmīs, *f.* *Winter.*

Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow.*

Hispaniā, *ae, f.* *Spain.*

Hispanūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard.*

Hōmērus, *i, m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.

Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man.*

Hōnōr, hōnōrīs, *m.* *Honor.*

Hōrā, *ae, f.* *Hour.*

Hostīs, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*

## I.

Idēm, eādēm, idēm. *Same, the same.* See 186.

Ignōrō, arē, avi, atum. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*

Illē, illā, illud. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.

Illustrō, arē, avi, atum. *To illustrate, illumine.*

Imāgō, imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture.*

Impatiens, impatiētīs, *f.* *Impatient.*

Impērātōr, impērātōrīs, *m.* *Commander.*

Impēriū, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, government.*

Impētūs, ūs, *m.* *Attack.*

Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wickedness.*

In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into, in, within.*

Incertūs, ā, ūm. *Uncertain.*

Indicō, indicērē, indicī, indictum. *To declare.*

Infestō, arē, avi, atum. *To infest.*

Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*

Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*

Insāniā, *ae, f.* *Insanity.*

Insulā, *ae, f.* *Island.*

Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*

Intrō, arē, avi, atum. *To enter.*

Inventōr, inventōrīs, *m.* *Inventor.*

Invitō, arē, avi, atum. *To invite.*

Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum. *Self, he, himself.* See 186.

Is, eā, id. *That, he, she, it.*

Istē, istā, istud. *That, such.* See 186.

Italiā, *ae, f.* *Italy.*

## J.

Jaciō, jacerē, jeci, jactum. *To cast, throw, hurl.*

Jān, *adv.* *Now, already.*

Jucundūs, ā, ūm. *Delightful, pleasant.*

Jūdex, judicīs, *m. and f.* *Judge.*

Jungō, jungērē, junxi, junctum. *To join.*

Justitiā, *ae, f.* *Justice.*

Justūs, ā, ūm. *Upright, just.*

Jūvenīs, jūvenīs, *m. and f.* *A youth, young man.*

Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*

## L.

Lābōr, lābōrīs, *m.* *Labor.*

Lābōrō, arē, avi, atum. *To strive for, labor, work.*

Lacēdaemōniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.*

Laetitiā, *ae, f.* *Joy.*

Lāpis, lāpidīs, *m.* *Stone.*

Lātinē, *adv.* *In Latin.*

Lātinūs, *i, m.* *Latinus, a Latin king.*

Lātūs, ā, ūm. *Broad.*



Laudābīlis, ū. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*

Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To praise.*

Laus, laudis, *f.* *Praise.*

Lāvinia, ac, *f.* *Lavinia, a proper name.*

Lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, *f.* *Embassy.*

Lēgātus, i, *m.* *Ambassador.*

Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, *f.* *Legion, a body of soldiers.*

Lēgō, lēgēre, lēgi, lectūm. *To choose, appoint.*

Leō, leōnis, *m.* *Lion.*

Lētālis, ū. *Mortal, deadly.*

Lex, lēgis, *f.* *Law.*

Līber, librī, *m.* *Book.*

Līberō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To liberate.*

Libertās, libertātis, *f.* *Liberty.*

Longus, ū, tūm. *Long.*

Lūcus, i, *m.* *Grove.*

Lūnā, ac, *f.* *Moon.*

Luscīniā, ac, *f.* *Nightingale.*

Lux, lucis, *f.* *Light.*

Luxuriā, ac, *f.* *Luxury.*

Lycurgus, i, *m.* *Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.*

Lysander, Lysandri, *m.* *Lysander, a Spartan general.*

### M.

Macedōniā, ac, *f.* *Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.*

Māgister, māgistrī, *m.* *Master, teacher.*

Magnōperē, adv. *Greatly.*

Magnus, ū, tūm. *Great, large.*

Mālūm, i, *n.* *Evil.*

Marcellus, i, *m.* *Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.*

Mārē, mārīs, *n.* *Sea.*

Mātēr, matrīs, *f.* *Mother.*

Mātūrus, ū, tūm. *Ripe.*

Mēmōriā, ac, *f.* *Memory.*

Mensā, ac, *f.* *Table.*

Mensis, mensis, *m.* *Month.*

Mercēs, mercēdis, *f.* *Reward.*

Mērēō, mērēre, mēruī, mērītūm. *To deserve, merit.*

Mētis, ū, tūm. *My. See 185.*

Milēs, militis, *m.* *Soldier.*

Miltiādēs, Is, *m.* *Miltiades, an Athenian general.*

Mōdestiā, ac, *f.* *Modesty.*

Mōnēō, mōnēre, mōnuī, mōnītūm. *To advise.*

Mons, montis, *m.* *Mountain.*

Monstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To show, point out.*

Mōrā, ac, *f.* *Delay.*

Mors, mortis, *f.* *Death.*

Multitūdō, multitudinis, *f.* *Multitude.*

Multus, ū, tūm. *Much, many.*

Mundus, i, *m.* *World, universe.*

Muniō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To fortify, defend.*

Mūnus, mūneris, *n.* *Gift, present.*

Mūrīs, i, *m.* *Wall.*

Mūtatiō, mūtatiōnis, *f.* *Change, phase.*

### N.

Nātālis, ū. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*

Nātālis diēs. *Birth-day.*

Nātūrā, ac, *f.* *Nature.*

Nāvālis, ū. *Naval.*

Nāvīgō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To sail to.*

Nāvis, nāvis, *f.* *Ship.*

Necessārius, ū, tūm. *Necessary.*

Necessitās, necessitātis, *f.* *Necessity.*

Nēpōs, nēpōtis, *m.* *Grandson.*

Nōbīlis, ū. *Noble.*

Nōmēn, nōmīnis, *n.* *Name.*

Nōmīnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To call, name.*

*Nōn, adv. Not.*

*Nonnē, interrog. part. Expects the answer, Yes. See 346, II., 2.*

*Nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm. Our, our own, ours.*

*Nōvītās, nōvītātis, f. Novelty.*

*Nōvūs, ā, ūm. New.*

*Nox, noctis, f. Night.*

*Nūbēs, nūbīs, f. Cloud.*

*Nūm, interrog. part. Expects the answer, No. See 346, II., 1.*

*Nūmā, ae, m. Numa, a Roman king.*

*Nūmērūs, ī, m. Number, quantity.*

*Nummūs, ī, m. Money, a piece of money, a coin.*

*Nuntiō, ārē, āvī, āttīm. To proclaim, announce.*

## O.

*Obsēs, obsīdis, m. and f. Hostage.*

*Occāsūs, ūs, m. Setting, going down.*

*Occūpō, ārē, āvī, āttīm. To occupy, take possession of.*

*Octāvūs, ā, ūm. Eighth.*

*Octō. Eight. See 176.*

*Octōgintā. Eighty. See 176.*

*Oculūs, ī, m. Eye.*

*Odiōsūs, ā, ūm. Odious, hateful.*

*Omnīs, ē. All, every, whole.*

*Oppīdūm, ī, n. Town, city.*

*Oppugnō, ārē, āvī, āttīm. To besiege, take by storm.*

*Optō, ārē, āvī, āttīm. To wish for, desire.*

*Opulētūs, ā, ūm. Rich, opulent.*

*Opūs, ōpēris, n. Work.*

*Orātiō, orātiōnis, f. Oration, speech.*

*Orātūr, orātōris, m. Orator.*

*Orbīs, orbīs, m. Circle.*

*Orbīs terrārūm. The world.*

*Ornō, ārē, āvī, āttīm. To adorn, be an ornament to.*

*Ovis, ōvis, f. Sheep.*

## P.

*Pārens, pārentis, m. and f. Parent.*

*Pārē, pārērē, pārui, pāritūm. To obey.*

*Par, partis, f. Part, portion.*

*Parvūs, ā, ūm. Small.*

*Passēr, passēris, m. Sparrow.*

*Pastōr, pastōris, m. Shepherd.*

*Pātēr, pātris, m. Father.*

*Pātriā, ac, f. Native country, country.*

*Paulūs, ī, m. Paulus, a Roman consul.*

*Pax, pācis, f. Peace.*

*Pēcūniā, ac, f. Money.*

*Pellis, pellis, f. Skin, hide.*

*Pēr, prep. with acc. Of, through.*

*Pērāgrō, ārē, āvī, āttīm. To wander through.*

*Pēritūs, ā, ūm. Skilled in.*

*Persā, ae, m. A Persian.*

*Pēs, pēdis, m. Foot.*

*Philippūs, ī, m. Philip, king of Macedon.*

*Philōsōphiā, ac, f. Philosophy.*

*Philōsōphūs, ī, m. Philosopher.*

*Piētās, piētātis, f. Filial affection, piety, duty.*

*Pirātā, ae, m. Pirate.*

*Piscis, piscis, m. Fish.*

*Pisistrātūs, ī, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*

*Plācē, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm. To please.*

*Plētūs, ā, ūm. Full.*

*Poenūs, ā, ūm. Carthaginian.*

*Poenus, ī, m. A Carthaginian.*

*Pōmūm, ī, n. Fruit.*

*Pomplītūs, ii, m. Pompilius, a Roman name.*

*Pompēītūs, ii, m. Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

*Pondūs, pondēris, n. Weight, mass.*

Portūs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*  
 Post, *prep. with acc. After.*  
 Pōtens, pōtētis. *Powerful, able.*  
 Praebē, praebēre, praebui, praebītūm. *To show, furnish, give.*  
 Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*  
 Praeceptūm, ī, *n.* *Rule, precept.*  
 Praeclārus, ū, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished.*  
 Praedicō, praedicōre, praedixi, praedictūm. *To predict, foretell.*  
 Praemītūm, īi, *n.* *Reward.*  
 Prātūm, ī, *n.* *Meadow.*  
 Prētiōsus, ū, ūm. *Valuable.*  
 Primūs, ū, ūm. *First.*  
 Principiūm, īi, *n.* *Beginning.*  
 Prō, *prep. with abl. In behalf of, for.*  
 Proeliūm, īi, *n.* *Battle.*  
 Prospere, *adv. Successfully.*  
 Prōvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To challenge.*  
 Prudentia, ae, *f.* *Prudence.*  
 Publīus, īi, *m.* *Publius, a Roman name.*  
 Puellā, ae, *f.* *Girl.*  
 Puēr, puēri, *m.* *Boy.*  
 Pugnā, ae, *f.* *Battle.*  
 Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To fight.*  
 Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beautiful.*  
 Pūnicūs, ū, ūm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*  
 Pyrrhūs, ī, *m.* *Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.*

## Q.

Quām, *conj. Than.*  
 Quartūs, ū, ūm. *Fourth.*  
 Quattuor. *Four. See 176.*  
 Quī, quao, quōd, *rel. pronoun. Who, which, what. See 187.*

Quinquāgintā. *Fifty. See 176.*  
 Quinquē. *Five. See 176.*  
 Quintūs, ū, ūm. *Fifth.*  
 Quis, quae, quid? *interrog. pronoun. Who, which, what? See 188.*  
 Quivis, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis, *indef. pronoun. Whoever, whatever. See 190.*  
 Quotidianūs, ū, ūm. *Daily.*  
 Quotidiē, *adv. Daily.*

## R.

Rāmūs, ī, *m.* *Branch.*  
 Ratiō, ratiōnis, *f.* *Reason.*  
 Rectē, *adv. Rightly.*  
 Rectūm, ī, *n.* *Right, rectitude.*  
 Rēducō, rēducēre, rēdūxi, rēductūm. *To lead back.*  
 Rēginā, ae, *f.* *Queen.*  
 Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, *f.* *Region, territory.*  
 Rēgulus, ī, *m.* *Regulus, a Roman general.*  
 Regnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To reign.*  
 Regnūm, ī, *n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*  
 Rēgō, rēgēre, rexī, rectūm. *To rule.*  
 Rēnōvō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To renew.*  
 Rēs, rei, *f.* *Thing, affair.*  
 Rēs publicā. *Republic.*  
 Rēvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To recall.*  
 Rex, rēgis, *m.* *King.*  
 Rhēnūs, ī, *m.* *Rhine.*  
 Rōmā, ae, *f.* *Rome.*  
 Rōmānūs, ū, ūm. *Roman.*  
 Rōmānūs, ī, *m.* *Roman, a Roman.*  
 Rōmulus, ī, *m.* *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

## S.

Sāguntūm, ī, *n.* *Saguntum, a town in Spain.*

Sālūs, sālūtis, *f.* *Safety.*  
 Sālūtāris, *ē.* *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*  
 Sālūtō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To salute.*  
 Sanctūs, ā, ūm. *Holy, sacred.*  
 Sāpiens, sāpientis. *Wise.*  
 Sāpientēr, *adv.* *Wisely.*  
 Sāpientiā, *ae, f.* *Wisdom.*  
 Schōlā, *ae, f.* *School.*  
 Scientiā, *ae, f.* *Knowledge.*  
 Scipiō, Scipiōnis, *m.* *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*  
 Scribō, scribēre, scripsī, scriptūm. *To write.*  
 Scythae, ārum, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*  
 Sēcundūs, ā, ūm. *Second, favorable.*  
 Sempēr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*  
 Sēnātor, sēnātoris, *m.* *Senator.*  
 Sēnātūs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*  
 Sēnectiūs, sēnectūtis, *f.* *Old age.*  
 Sensūs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*  
 Sententiā, *ae, f.* *Opinion.*  
 Sermō, sermōnis, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*  
 Serviō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To serve.*  
 Serviūs, ii, *m.* *Servius, a Roman proper name.*  
 Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To preserve, keep, save.*  
 Servūs, i, *m.* *Slave.*  
 Sex. *Six.* See 176.  
 Siciliā, *ae, f.* *Sicily.*  
 Silentiūm, ii, *n.* *Silence.*  
 Sīmīlis, *ē.* *Like.*  
 Singulārīs, *ē.* *Remarkable, singular.*  
 Sōcēr, sōcēri, *m.* *Father-in-law.*  
 Sōciūs, ii, *m.* *Ally, associate.*  
 Sōcrātēs, īs, *m.* *Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*  
 Sōl, sōlis, *m.* *Sun.*

Sōlōn, Sōlōnis, *m.* *Solon, an Athenian legislator.*  
 Sōlūm, i, *n.* *Soil.*  
 Spartā, *ae, f.* *Sparta, capital of Laconia.*  
 Spēcies, spēcīē, *f.* *Appearance.*  
 Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To hope.*  
 Spēs, spēi, *f.* *Hope.*  
 Spōliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*  
 Stīmulō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To stimulate.*  
 Stultitiā, *ae, f.* *Folly.*  
 Suī, sibi. *Himself, herself, itself.* See 184.  
 Sūm, eṣṣē, fui. *To be.* See 204.  
 Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To conquer.*  
 Supplicium, ii, *n.* *Punishment.*  
 Sūtis, ā, ūm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*  
 Sŷracūsae, ārum, *f. plur.* *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

## T.

Tācēō, tācērē, tācui, tācītūm. *To be silent.*  
 Tārentūm, i, *n.* *Tarentum, an Italian town.*  
 Tarquiniūs, ii, *m.* *Tarquin, a Roman king.*  
 Tēlūm, i, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*  
 Tēmērītās, tēmērītātis, *f.* *Rashness.*  
 Templūm, i, *n.* *Temple.*  
 Tempūs, tempōris, *n.* *Time.*  
 Terrā, *ae, f.* *Land, earth.*  
 Terrō, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm. *To frighten, terrify.*  
 Tertius, ā, ūm. *Third.*  
 Thālēs, īs, *m.* *Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*  
 Thēbānūs, ā, ūm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

Thēbāntis, i, m. *A Theban.*  
 Thēmistōclēs, is, m. *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*  
 Thrāsýbulus, i, m. *Thrasylulus, the liberator of Athens.*  
 Ticinūs, i, m. *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*  
 Trēs, triā. *Three. See 175.*  
 Trīgintā. *Thirty. See 176.*  
 Triumphō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To triumph.*  
 Trōjā, ac, f. *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*  
 Tū, tuī. *Thou, you. See 184.*  
 Tullia, ac, f. *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*  
 Tullus, i, m. *Tullus, a Roman king.*  
 Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*  
 Turris, turris, f. *Tower.*  
 Tuus, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*  
 Týrannus, i, m. *Tyrant.*  
 Týrius, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*

## U.

Ulyssēs, is, m. *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*  
 Unīversus, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*  
 Unus, ā, ūm. *One. See 175.*  
 Urbs, urbis, f. *City.*  
 Usus, ūs, m. *Use.*  
 Utīlis, ē. *Useful.*

## V.

Vālētūdō, vālētūdinis, f. *Health.*  
 Vāriētās, vāriētātis, f. *Variety.*  
 Vārius, ā, ūm. *Various.*  
 Varrō, varrōnis, m. *Varro, a Roman consul.*  
 Vēr, vēris, n. *Spring.*  
 Verbūm, i, n. *Word.*

Vērēcundiā, ac, f. *Modesty.*  
 Vēritās, vēritātis, f. *Truth, verity.*  
 Vērus, ā, ūm. *True, real.*  
 Vērum, i, n. *Truth.*  
 Vestrē, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*  
 Vestiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To clothe.*  
 Viā, ac, f. *Way, road.*  
 Victōr, victōris, m. *Victor, conqueror.*  
 Victōriā, ac, f. *Victory.*  
 Victōriā, ac, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*  
 Vigīlō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*  
 Vīlis, ē. *Cheap.*  
 Vindex, vindicis, m. and f. *Vindicator, avenger.*  
 Viōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To violate.*  
 Vīr, vīri, m. *Man, hero, soldier.*  
 Virgō, virgīnis, f. *Maiden, girl.*  
 Virtūs, virtūtis, f. *Valor, virtue.*  
 Vitā, ac, f. *Life.*  
 Vītūm, ī, n. *Fault, vice.*  
 Vītūpērō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*  
 Vivō, vivēre, vixi, vīctūm. *To live, reside.*  
 Vōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To call.*  
 Vōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To fly.*  
 Vōluntārius, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*  
 Vōluptās, vōluptātis, f. *Pleasure.*  
 Vox, vōcis, f. *Voice.*  
 Vulnērō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To wound.*  
 Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*  
 Vultūr, vultūris, m. *Vulture.*  
 Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*

## X.

Xerxēs, is, m. *Xerxes, a Persian king.*

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

---

### A.

**A, an.** *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.

**Acceptable.** *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

**Admonish.** *Admōneð, admōnērē, admōnui, admōnūtūm.*

**Adorned.** *Ornātūs, ā, ūm.*

**Advise.** *Mōneð, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnūtūm.*

**After.** *Post, prep. with acc.*

**Against.** *Contrā, prep. with acc.*  
Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

**Alexander.** *Alexandēr, Alexandrī, m.*

**All.** *Om̃is, ē.*

**Always.** *Semp̃r, adv.*

**Announce.** *Nuntið, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Appoint.** *Creð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Army.** *Exercitūs, ūs, m.*

**Arrival.** *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

**At.** *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time.* See 421 and 426.

**Athenian.** *Athēniens̃s, ē.*

**Athenian, an Athenian.** *Athēniens̃s, is, m. and f.*

**Athens.** *Athēnae, ārūm, f. plur.*

**Attack.** *Imp̃etūs, ūs, m.*

**Await.** *Expectð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

### B.

**Battle.** *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

**Battle-array.** *Acies, ei, f.*

**Be.** *Sā̃m, esse, fui.*

**Be silent.** *Taceð, tacerē, taceui, tectūm.*

**Beautiful.** *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*

**Before.** *Antē, prep. with acc.*

**Bird.** *Aṽs, ū̃s, f.*

**Birth-day.** *Nātālis diēs, m.*

**Blame.** *Vitūp̃etð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Book.** *Lībēr, librī, m.*

**Boy.** *Puēr, puērī, m.*

**Brave.** *Fortis, ē.*

**Bravely.** *Fortit̃er, adv.*

**Bravery.** *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*

**Bring to a close.** *Finīð, irē, ĩvī, ū̃m.*

**Brother.** *Frāter, frātris, m.*

**Brutus.** *Brūtus, ī, m.*

**By.** *A, ab, prep. with abl.* Often denoted by the Ablative alone.  
See 414.

### C.

**Caius.** *Cāiūs, ū, m.*

**Call.** *Vocð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Camillus.** *Cāmillūs, ī, m.*

**Campanian, of Campania.** *Campānūs, ā, ūm.*

**Carthage.** *Carthāgð, Carthāg̃inis, f.*

**Carthaginian.** *Carthāg̃iniens̃s, ē.*

**Carthaginian, a Carthaginian.** *Carthāg̃iniens̃s, is, m. and f.*

**Cato.** *Cātð, Cātð̃is, m.*

**Cicero.** *Cic̃erð, Cic̃erō̃is, m.*

Citizen. *Civis, civis, m. and f.*  
 City. *Urbs, urbs, f.*  
 Cloud. *Nubēs, nubēs, f.*  
 Commander. *Impēratōr, impēratōris, m.*  
 Concerning. *Dē, prep. with abl.*  
 Consul. *Consul, consuls, m.*  
 Contrary to. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*  
 Conversation. *Sermō, sermōnis, m.*  
 Corinth. *Cōrinthiās, ī, f.*  
 Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ū, m.*  
 Cornelius. *Cornēliūs, ū, m.*  
 Correct. *Corrigō, corrigēre, corraēi, correctūm.*  
 Country. *Patriā, ae, f.*  
 Courage. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*  
 Crown. *Cōrōnā, ae, f.*

## D.

Daily. *Quotidiānus, ā, ūm.*  
 Daughter. *Filiā, ae, f.*  
 Day. *Diēs, diēi, m.* See 120, note.  
 Dear. *Cārus, ā, ūm.*  
 Declare. *Indicō, indicēre, indixi, indictūm.*  
 Delight. *Dēlectō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Desirous of. *Cupidus, ā, ūm; avidus, ā, ūm.*  
 Did. *Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.*  
 Diligence. *Diligentiā, ae, f.*  
 Diligent. *Diligens, diligentis.*  
 Do. *Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.*

## E.

Eight. *Octō.* See 176.  
 Eighth. *Octāvus, ā, ūm.*  
 Enemy. *Hostis, hostis, m. and f.*

Exercise. *Exerco, exerceō, exercui, exercitum.*

Exile. *Exsul, exsulis, m. and f.*

Expect. *Exspectō, arē, avi, atum.*

## F.

Father. *Pater, patris, m.*

Father-in-law. *Socr, socri, m.*

Fertile. *Fertilis, ē.*

Fidelity. *Fides, fidei, f.*

Field. *Agēr, agrī, m.*

Fifth. *Quintus, ū, ūm.*

Fifty. *Quinquaginta.* See 176.

Fight. *Pugnō, are, avi, atum.*

Finish. *Finio, ire, ivi, itum.*

Five. *Quinquē.* See 176.

Flee. *Fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitum.*

Flower. *Flōs, flōris, m.*

Fly. *Volo, arē, avi, atum.*

Foot. *Pes, pedis, m.*

Fond of. *Amans, amantis.*

For. *Pro, prep. with abl.* In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).

Fortify. *Munio, ire, ivi, itum.*

Four. *Quattuor.* See 176.

Fourth. *Quartus, ā, ūm.*

Friend. *Amicus, ī, m.*

Friendship. *Amicitia, ae, f.*

From. *A, ab, prep. with abl.*

Fruit. *Fructus, ūs, m.*

## G.

Garden. *Hortus, ī, m.*

Gaul. *Gallus, ī, m.*

Gem. *Gemma, ae, f.*

General. *Dux, dūcis, m. and f.*

Gift. *Dōnum, ī, n.*

Glory. *Glōria, ae, f.*

Gold. *Aurum, ī, n.*

Golden. *Aureus, ā, ūm.*

Good. *Bōnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Goodness. *Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.*  
 Govern. *Rējō, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.*  
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*  
 Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*  
 Guard. *Custōdiō, irē, irī, itūm.*

## H.

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*

Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.*

Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*

Have. *Hābēō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm.*

Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.

He, she, it. *Is, eā, id; illē, illā, illud.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.

He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

Hear. *Audiō, irē, irī, itūm.*

High. *Altūs, altā, altūm.*

Himself. *Sui (184); \*ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*

Hope (verb). *Spērō, arē, avī, atūm.*

Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēi, f.*

Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*

Hundred. *Centūm.* See 176.

## I.

I. *Egō, meī.* See 184.

In. *In, prep. with abl.*

In behalf of. *Prō, prep. with abl.*

Instruct. *Erūdiō, irē, irī, itūm.*

Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.*

Into. *In, prep. with acc.*

Invite. *Invitō, arē, avī, atūm.*

Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*

Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*

It. See *he, she, it.*

Italy. *Italīā, ae, f.*

## J.

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdētis, m. and f.*

Justice. *Justitiā, ae, f.*

## K.

Keep one's word. *Fidēia servārē.*

See p. 74, note 4.

Kindly. *Bēignē, adv.*

King. *Rex, regis, m.*

Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

## L.

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*

Latinus. *Lātīnūs, ī, m.*

Lavinia. *Lāvinīā, ae, f.*

Law. *Lex, legis, f.*

Lead. *Ducō, ducērē, duxī, ductūm.*

Lead back. *Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.*

Lead forth. *Educō, educērē, eduxī, ēductūm.*

Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.

Leader. *Dux, dūctis, m. and f.*

Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*

Liberate. *Libērō, arē, avī, atūm.*

Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*

Like. *Similis, ē.*

Love. *Amō, arē, avī, atūm.*

## M.

Macedonia. *Mācēdōniā, ae, f.*

Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnis, m. Vir, viri, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.

Many. *Multī, ae, ā, plur.*

May. *A sign of the Present Subjunctive.*

May have. *A sign of the Perfect Subjunctive.*

Me. See I.

Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*



Might, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*

Might have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Mind. *Animūs, i, m.*

Moat. *Fossā, ae, f.*

Money. *Pecūniā, ae, f.*

Month. *Mensis, mensis, m.*

More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.

Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.

Mound. *Agger, aggeris, m.*

Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*

Much. *Multū, adv.*

My. *Meus, ō, ūm.* See 185.

### N.

Name. *Nōmēn, nōmīnis, n.*

Nightingale. *Luscinā, ae, f.*

Noble. *Nōbilitas, ē.*

Not. *Nōn, adv.* Interrogative, *nonnē.*

### O.

ObeY. *Pārē, pārēre, pārui, pārītūm.*

Observe. *Servē, arē, avi, atūm.*

Occupy. *Occupō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.

Of itself. *Pēr sē.*

On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.

One. *Unus, ō, ūm.* See 175.

Oration. *Oratīō, oratīōnis, f.*

Orator. *Oratōr, oratōris, m.*

Our. *Nostēr, trā, trūm.*

### P.

Parent. *Pārens, parentis, m. and f.*

Philip. *Philippūs, i, m.*

Pisistratus. *Pisistrātūs, i, m.*

Please. *Placē, placēre, placui, placitūm.*

Pleasing. *Grātūs, ō, ūm.*

Pleasure. *Voluptās, voluptātis, f.*

Plough. *Arō, arāre, aravi, aratūm.*

Plunder (verb). *Spoliō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Practise. *Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitūm; colō, colēre, colui, cultūm.*

Praise (verb). *Laudō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Praise (noun). *Laus, laudis, f.*

Precept. *Praeceptū, i, n.*

Predict. *Praedico, praedicere, praedixi, praedictūm.*

Present (noun). *Donū, i, n.*

Publius. *Publius, ū, m.*

Punish. *Punio, ire, iui, itūm.*

Pupil. *Discipulus, i, m.*

Put to flight. *Fugio, arē, avi, atūm.*

### Q.

Queen. *Rēginā, ae, f.*

### R.

Receive. *Accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptūm.*

Reign, royal authority. *Regnū, i, n.*

Renowned. *Clārus, ō, ūm.*

Reside. *Habito, arē, avi, atūm.*

Rhine. *Rhēnus, i, m.*

River. *Amnis, amnis, m.*

Roman. *Rōmānus, ō, ūm.*

Roman, a Roman. *Rōmānus, i, m.*

Rome. *Rōma, ae, f.*

Romulus. *Rōmulus, i, m.*

Rule. *Rēgō, rēgere, rexi, rectūm.*

### S.

Safety. *Sālūs, sālūtis, f.*

Same. *Idēm, eadēm, idēm.* See 186.

Say. *Dico, dicere, dixi, dictūm.*

Save. *Servō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Scipio. *Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.*  
 Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*  
 Serve. *Serviō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Servius. *Serviūs, ii, m.*  
 Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*  
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*  
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*  
 Shepherd. *Pastor, pastoris, m.*  
 Should, should have. *See might, might have.*  
 Show. *Monstrō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*  
 Silent. *See be silent.*  
 Silver. *Argentum, i, n.*  
 Sing. *Cantō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*  
 Six. *Sex.* *See 176.*  
 Slave. *Serviūs, i, m.*  
 Sleep. *Dormiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Soldier. *Milēs, militis, m.*  
 Somebody, some one. *Aliquis, aliquis, aliquid, or aliquid.* *See 191.*  
 Son. *Filiūs, ii, m.*  
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*  
 Song. *Carmēn, carminis, n.*  
 Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*  
 Strengthen. *Firmō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*  
 Sunset. *Occāsūs solis.*  
 Sword. *Gladius, ii, m.*

T.

Take. *Capiō, capere, cepi, captum.*  
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Tarquin. *Tarquinius, ii, m.*  
 Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 Temple. *Templum, i, n.*

Ten. *Dēcēn.* *See 176.*  
 Terrify. *Terreō, terrere, terrui, territum.*  
 Than. *Quān.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. *See 417.*  
 That. *Illē, illā, illud.* *See 186.*  
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* *See p. 12, note 1.*  
 Their. *Suūs, ū, um.*  
 Then. *Tūm, adv.*  
 Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*  
 This. *Hic, haec, hoc.* *See 186.*  
 Threē. *Trēs, tria.* *See 175.*  
 Time. *Tempus, temporis, n.*  
 To. *Ad, in, preps. with acc.* *To is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative.* *See 379 and 384.*  
 True. *Vērūs, ū, um.*  
 Truth. *Vērūm, i, n.*  
 Tullia. *Tulliā, ae, f.*  
 Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* *See 175.*  
 Tyrant. *Tyrannūs, i, m.*

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*  
 Useful. *Utīlis, ē.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*  
 Valuable. *Prētiōsūs, ū, um.*  
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* *See 160.*  
 Victoria. *Victoriā, ae, f.*  
 Victory. *Victoriā, ae, f.*  
 Violate. *Viō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Virtue. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambulō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 War. *Bellum, i, n.*

Way. *Via*, ae, f.

Well. *Bene*, adv.

Who, which (relative). *Qui*, quae, quod. See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative)?

*Quis*, quae, quid? *qui*, quae, quod?

See 188.

Wide. *Latus*, ō, ūm.

Wife. *Conjux*, conjūgīs, f.

Will, will have. See *shall*, *shall have*.

Winter. *Hibernia*, hibernis, f.

Wisdom. *Sapientia*, ae, f.

Wise. *Sapientis*, sapientis.

With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone.

See 414.

Word. *Verbum*, i, n. To keep one's word, *fidei servare*. See p. 74, note 4.

Would, would have. See *might*, *might have*.

Wound. *Vulner*, ō, ā, āvi, āvum.

Write. *Scribo*, scribere, scripsi, scriptum.

# Y.

Year. *Annus*, i, m.

You. *Tu*, tui. See 184.

Your. *Tuus*, ō, ūm; *vester*, vestra, vestrum.

Yourself. *Tu*, tui ipse.

*D. Appleton & Co.'s School and College Text-Books.*

---

**HARKNESS'S SERIES OF LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.**

---

I.	
First Latin Book.	12mo.....\$1 30
II.	
Second Latin Book and Reader.	12mo, 262 pages, 1 10
III.	
Introductory Latin Book.	12mo..... 1 10
IV.	
Latin Reader.	12mo..... 1 10
V.	
New Latin Reader.....	1 10
VI.	
Latin Reader. With Exercises.	1 vol., 12mo..... 1 30
VII.	
Elementary Latin Grammar.	12mo..... 1 10
VIII.	
New Latin Grammar. Revised edition. Embracing	
Important Results of Recent Philological Research.	12mo... 1 30
IX.	
Introduction to Latin Prose Composition....	1 30
X.	
Cæsar's Commentaries.	12mo..... 1 30
XI.	
Cicero.	12mo..... 1 30
XII.	
Cicero.	12mo. With Dictionary..... 1 50

THIS series has received the unqualified commendation of many of the most eminent classical professors and teachers in our country, and is already in use in every State in the Union, and, indeed, in nearly all our leading classical institutions of every grade, both of school and college. Each volume has been received with a degree of enthusiasm unsurpassed in our experience with text-books. We ask the attention of teachers to these works, in the conviction that they furnish a better course of elementary classical instruction than can elsewhere be found in our language.

*D. APPLETON & CO., 549 & 551 Broadway, New York.*

## Arnold's Latin Course :

- I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR. Revised and Carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 359 pages.
- II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION, Revised and carefully corrected by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 356 pages.
- III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin, in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo, 350 pages.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which Nature herself points out to the child learning his mother-tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put into the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonyms are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

*From N. WHEELER, Principal of Worcester County High School.*

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an interest in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

*From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.*

"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

*From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.*

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never understood it, they say, as they do now."

## Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, a Map of Gaul, etc. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 408 pages.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His Notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a Map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

## Quintus Curtius:

Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes. By WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

Curtius's History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

*From PROF. OWEN, of the New York Free Academy.*

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm. Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding, being just what a text-book should be, neat, clear, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholar-like, neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean so desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment."

## Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero :

With Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo, 459 pages.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, Madvig, and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor Johnson, of the New York University, have been mostly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

*From THOMAS CHASE, Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.*

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

"It seems to us an improvement upon any edition of these Orations that has been published in this country, and will be found a valuable aid in their studies to the lovers of classical literature."—*Troy Daily Whig*.

## Cicero de Officiis :

With English Notes, mostly translated from ZUMPT and BONNELL. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo, 194 pages.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionary in common use has not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which is to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatise, the thoughts and reasoning of the author, to explain grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

*From M. L. STOEVEB, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Pennsylvania College.*

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Thacher's edition of Cicero de Officiis, and am convinced of its excellence. The Notes have been prepared with great care and good judgment. Practical knowledge of the wants of the student has enabled the Editor to furnish just the kind of assistance required; grammatical difficulties are removed, and the obscurities of the treatise are explained, the interest of the learner is elicited, and his industry directed rather than superseded. There can be but one opinion with regard to the merits of the work, and I trust that Professor Thacher will be disposed to continue his labors so carefully commenced, in this department of classical learning."

## The Works of Horace.

With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. I. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo, 575 pages.

The text of this edition is mainly that of Orelli, the most important readings of other critics being given in foot-notes. The volume is introduced with a biographical sketch of Horace and a critique on his writings, which enable the student to enter intelligently on his work. Peculiar grammatical constructions, as well as geographical and historical allusions, are explained in notes, which are just full enough to aid the pupil, to excite him to gain a thorough understanding of the author, and awaken in him a taste for philological studies, without taking all labor off his hands. While the chief aim has been to impart a clear idea of Latin Syntax as exhibited in the text, it has also been a cherished object to take advantage of the means so variously and richly furnished by Horace for promoting the poetical taste and literary culture of the student.

*From an article by PROF. BAHR, of the University of Heidelberg, in the Heidelberg Annals of Literature.*

"There are already several American editions of Horace, intended for the use of schools; of one of these, which has passed through many editions, and has also been widely circulated in England, mention has been formerly made in this journal; but that one we may not put upon an equality with the one now before us, inasmuch as this has taken a different stand-point, which may serve as a sign of progress in this department of study. The editor has, it is true, also intended his work for the use of schools, and has sought to adapt it, in all its parts, to such a use; but still, without losing sight of this purpose, he has proceeded throughout with more independence. In the preparation of the Notes, the editor has faithfully observed the principles (laid down in his preface); the explanations of the poet's words commend themselves by a compressed brevity which limits itself to what is most essential, and by a sharp precision of expression; and references to other passages of the poet, and also to grammars, dictionaries, etc., are not wanting."

## Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.

With Notes and a Vocabulary. By NOBLE BUTLER and MINARD STURGIS. 12mo, 397 pages.

The editors have spent a vast amount of time and labor in correcting the text, by a comparison of the most improved German and English editions. It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition hitherto published in this country. In accordance with their chronological order, the "Jugurtha" precedes the "Catiline." The Notes are copious and tersely expressed; they display not only fine scholarship, but (what is quite as necessary in such a book) a practical knowledge of the difficulties which the student encounters in reading this author, and the aids that he requires. The Vocabulary was prepared by the late WILLIAM H. G. BUTLER. It will be found an able and faithful performance.



## Germania and Agricola of Caius Cornelius Tacitus :

With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo, 193 pages.

Tacitus's account of Germany and life of Agricola are among the most fascinating and instructive Latin classics. The present edition has been prepared expressly for college classes, by one who knows what they need. In it will be found: 1. A Latin text, approved by all the more recent editors. 2. A copious illustration of the grammatical constructions, as well as of the rhetorical and poetical usages peculiar to Tacitus. In a writer so concise it has been deemed necessary to pay particular regard to the connection of thought, and to the particles as the hinges of that connection. 3. Constant comparisons of the writer with the authors of the Augustan age, for the purpose of indicating the changes which had already been wrought in the language of the Roman people. 4. An embodiment in small compass of the most valuable labors of such recent German critics as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kiessling, Dronke, Roth, Ruperti, and Walther.

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the Life of Tacitus and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

## The History of Tacitus :

By W. S. TYLER. With Notes for Colleges. 12mo, 453 pages.

The text of Tacitus is here presented in a form as correct as a comparison of the best editions can make it. Notes are appended for the student's use, which contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archæological, and historical illustrations that are necessary to render the author intelligible. It has been the constant aim of the editor to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them to a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times. Indexes to the notes, and to the names of persons and places, render reference easy.

*From PROF. HACKETT, of Newton Theological Seminary.*

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the 'Germania and Agricola.' They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic, as almost any thing that I have yet seen."

## Lincoln's Livy.

Selections from the first Five Books, together with the Twenty-First and Twenty-Second Books entire; with a Plan of Rome, a Map of the passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo, 329 pages.

The publishers believe that in this edition of Livy a want is supplied which has been universally felt; there being previous to this no American edition furnished with the requisite aids for the successful study of this Latin author. The text is chiefly that of Alschefski, which is now generally received by the best critics. The notes have been prepared with special reference to the grammatical study of the language, and the illustration of its forms, constructions, and idioms, as used by Livy. They will not be found to foster habits of dependence in the student, by supplying indiscriminate translation or unnecessary assistance; but come to his help only in such parts as it is fair to suppose he cannot master by his own exertions. They also embrace all necessary information relating to history, geography, and antiquities.

Lincoln's Livy has been highly commended by critics, and is used in nearly all the colleges in the country.

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Waterville College.*

"A careful examination of several portions of your work has convinced me that, for the use of students, it is altogether superior to any edition of Livy with which I am acquainted. Among its excellences you will permit me to name the close attention given to particles, to the subjunctive mood, the constant reference to the grammars, the discrimination of words nearly synonymous, and the care in giving the localities mentioned in the text. The book will be hereafter used in our college."

## Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament.

12mo, 291 pages.

The now-acknowledged propriety of giving students of languages familiar works for translation—thus adopting in the schools the mode by which the child first learns to talk—has induced the publication of this new American edition of Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. Ever since its first appearance, this work has kept its place in the general esteem; while more recent versions have been so strongly tinged with the peculiar views of the translators as to make them acceptable to particular classes only. The editor has exerted himself to render the present edition worthy of patronage by its superior accuracy and neatness; and the publishers flatter themselves that the pains bestowed will insure for it a preference over other editions.

## Virgil's *Æneid*.

With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY S. FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. Illustrated. 12mo, 598 pages.

The appearance of this edition of Virgil's *Æneid* will, it is believed, be hailed with delight by all classical teachers. Neither expense nor pains have been spared to clothe the great Latin epic in a fitting dress. The type is unusually large and distinct, and errors in the text, so annoying to the learner, have been carefully avoided. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, costumes, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations. The great feature of this edition is the scholarly and judicious commentary furnished in the appended Notes. The author has here endeavored not to show his learning, but to supply such practical aid as will enable the pupil to understand and appreciate what he reads. The notes are just full enough, thoroughly explaining the most difficult passages, while they are not so extended as to take all labor off the pupil's hands. Properly used, they cannot fail to impart an intelligent acquaintance with the syntax of the language. In a word, this work is commended to teachers as the most elegant, accurate, interesting, and practically useful edition of the *Æneid* that has yet been published.

*From JOHN H. BRUNNER, President of Hivassé College.*

"The typography, paper, and binding of Virgil's *Æneid*, by Prof. Frieze, are all that need be desired; while the learned and judicious notes appended, are very valuable indeed."

*From Principal of Piedmont (Va.) Academy.*

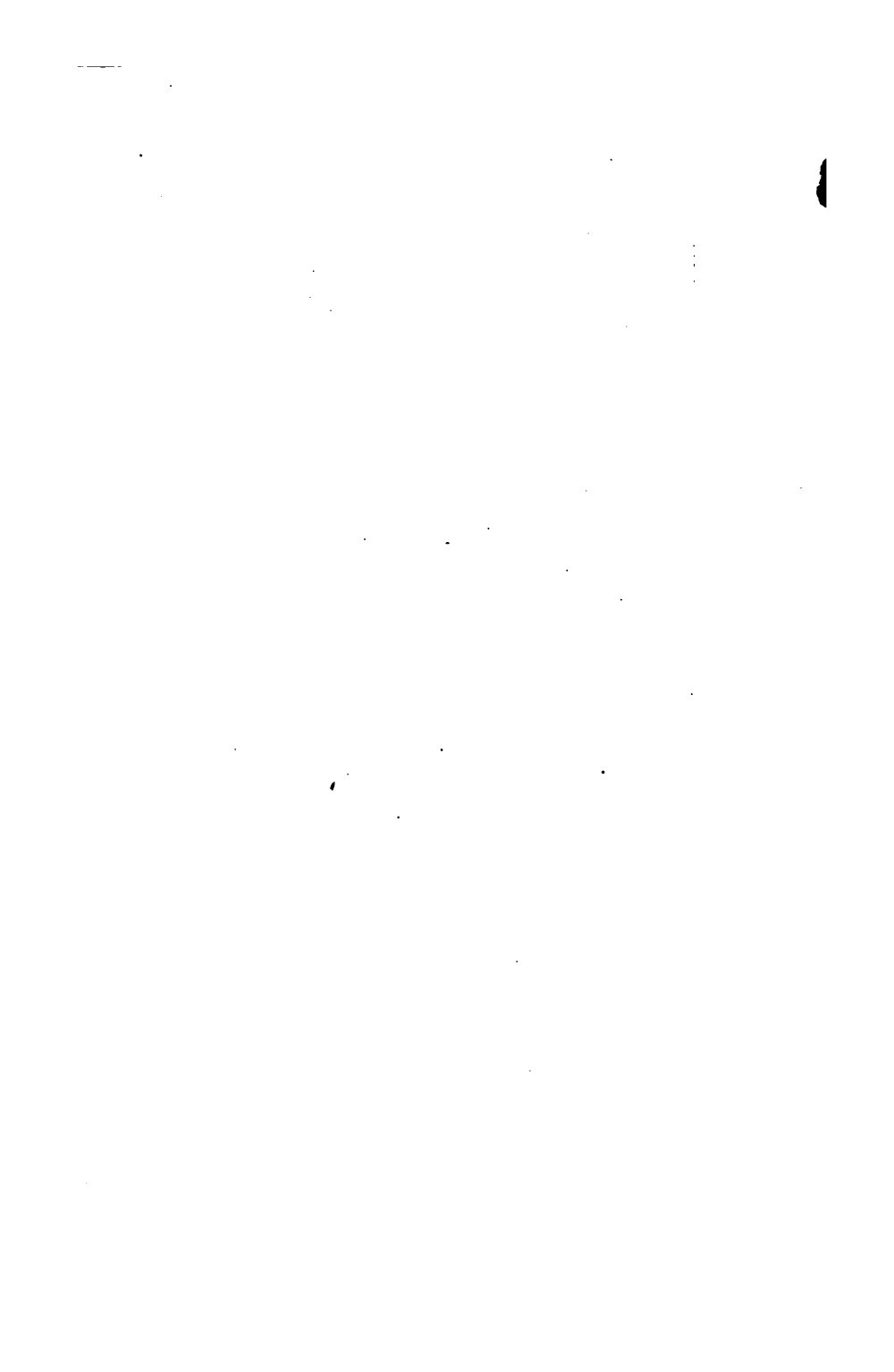
"I have to thank you for a copy of Prof. Frieze's edition of the *Æneid*. I have been exceedingly pleased in my examination of it. The size of the type from which the text is printed, and the faultless execution, leave nothing to be desired in these respects. The adherence to a standard text throughout, increases the value of this edition."

*From D. G. MOORE, Principal U. High School, Rutland.*

"The copy of Frieze's 'Virgil' forwarded to me was duly received. It is so evidently superior to any of the other editions, that I shall unhesitatingly adopt it in my classes."







*STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.*

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book**, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

**Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition**. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar**. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek**; \* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar**, \* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

— **Elements of the Greek Grammar**. 12mo.

**Herodotus, Selections from**; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

**Homer's Iliad**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 759 pages.

— **Odyssey**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

**Kuhner's Greek Grammar**. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 630 pages.

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff**. \* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

**Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis**. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

— **Homer's Iliad**. 12mo. 759 pages.

— **Greek Reader**. 12mo.

— **Acts of the Apostles**, in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

— **Homer's Odyssey**. Tenth Edition. 12mo.

— **Thucydides**. With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

— **Xenophon's Cyropaedia**. Eighth Edition. 12mo.

**Plato's Apology and Crito**. \* With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

*STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.*

---

**Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

**Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates**. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 481 pages.

**Anabasis**. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOIES, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 386 pages.

**Anabasis**. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

**Cyropædia**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

**Sophocles's *Edipus Tyrannus***. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 128 pages.

**HEBREW AND SYRIAC.**

**Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar**. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

**Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar**. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.

---

**D. APPLETON & CO., 549 & 551 BROADWAY, N. Y.,**

PUBLISHERS UPWARD OF

**800 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,**

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

**DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE**

*Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.*

A single copy for examination, of any of the works marked thus \*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any Teacher remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, postage prepaid, upon receipt of full retail price.



701